

---

---

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549**

---

**FORM 10-K**

---

(Mark One)

**ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

For the Fiscal Year Ended December 31, 2017

**TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

For the transition period from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_

Commission file number: 001-36379

---

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**

(Exact Name of Registrant as Specified in Its Charter)

---

Delaware  
(State or Other Jurisdiction of Incorporation or Organization)

46-1318953  
(I.R.S. Employer Identification No.)

3590 North First Street, Suite 210, San Jose, CA  
(Address of Principal Executive Offices)

95134  
(Zip Code)

(408) 963-0200

(Registrant's telephone number, including area code)

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12 (g) of the Act: Common Stock, par value \$0.001 per share

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. Yes  No

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Act. Yes  No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes  No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate Web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files). Yes  No

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of registrant's knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10-K.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or a smaller reporting company. See definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer" and "smaller reporting company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act. (Check one):

Large accelerated filer

Accelerated filer

Non-accelerated filer  (Do not check if a smaller reporting company)

Smaller reporting company

Emerging growth company

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Act): Yes  No

The aggregate market value of the voting and non-voting common equity held by non-affiliates computed by reference to the price at which the common equity was last sold, or the average bid and asked price of such common equity, as of the last business day of the registrant's most recently completed second fiscal quarter was \$288,974,313. Solely for the purposes of this calculation, shares held by directors, executive officers and 10% owners of the registrant have been excluded. Such exclusion should not be deemed a determination or an admission by the registrant that such individuals are, in fact, affiliates of the registrant.

As of March 2, 2018, there were 25,155,547 shares of the registrant's common stock outstanding.

DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

The registrant intends to file a definitive proxy statement pursuant to Regulation 14A within 120 days after the end of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017. Portions of such proxy statement are incorporated by reference into Part III of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

---

---

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<a href="#">PART I</a>	1
<a href="#">Item 1. Business</a>	1
<a href="#">Item 1A. Risk Factors</a>	11
<a href="#">Item 1B. Unresolved Staff Comments</a>	24
<a href="#">Item 2. Properties</a>	24
<a href="#">Item 3. Legal Proceedings</a>	24
<a href="#">Item 4. Mine Safety Disclosures</a>	24
<a href="#">PART II</a>	25
<a href="#">Item 5. Market for Registrant’s Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities</a>	25
<a href="#">Item 6. Selected Financial Data</a>	25
<a href="#">Item 7. Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations</a>	26
<a href="#">Item 7A. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk</a>	32
<a href="#">Item 8. Financial Statements and Supplementary Data</a>	33
<a href="#">Item 9. Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure</a>	61
<a href="#">Item 9A. Controls and Procedures</a>	61
<a href="#">Item 9B. Other Information</a>	62
<a href="#">PART III</a>	65
<a href="#">Item 10. Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance</a>	65
<a href="#">Item 11. Executive Compensation</a>	65
<a href="#">Item 12. Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholders Matters</a>	65
<a href="#">Item 13. Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence</a>	65
<a href="#">Item 14. Principal Accountant Fees and Services</a>	65
<a href="#">PART IV</a>	65
<a href="#">Item 15. Exhibits, Financial Statements and Schedules</a>	65

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

PART I

As used in this Annual Report on Form 10-K, unless the context otherwise requires the terms “we,” “us,” “our,” and “Energeous” refer to Energeous Corporation, a Delaware corporation.

FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This Annual Report on Form 10-K (“Report”) contains forward-looking statements within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, that are intended to be covered by the “safe harbor” created by those sections. Forward-looking statements, which are based on certain assumptions and describe our future plans, strategies and expectations, can generally be identified by the use of forward-looking terms such as “believe,” “expect,” “may,” “will,” “should,” “could,” “seek,” “intend,” “plan,” “estimate,” “anticipate” or other comparable terms. All statements other than statements of historical facts included in this Report regarding our strategies, prospects, financial condition, operations, costs, plans and objectives are forward-looking statements. Examples of forward-looking statements include, among others, statements we make regarding proposed business strategy; market opportunities; expectations for current and potential business relationships; expectations for revenues, cash flows and financial performance; and anticipated results of research and development efforts. These forward-looking statements are based on our current information and beliefs. Because forward-looking statements relate to the future, they are subject to inherent uncertainties, risks and changes in circumstances that are unpredictable and many of which are outside of our control. Actual results may differ materially from what is anticipated, so you should not rely on these forward-looking statements. Important factors that could cause actual outcomes to differ materially from those indicated in the forward-looking statements include, among others, the following: our ability to develop a commercially feasible technology; receipt of necessary regulatory approval; our ability to find and maintain development partners, market acceptance of our technology; competition in our industry; protection of our intellectual property; and other risks and uncertainties described in the Risk Factors and in Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations sections of this Report and our subsequently filed Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q. We undertake no obligation to update any forward-looking statement, whether written or oral, that may be made from time to time, whether as a result of new information, future developments or otherwise.

**Item 1. Business**

**Overview**

We have developed a technology called WattUp® that consists of proprietary semiconductor chipsets, software, hardware designs and antennas that enables radio frequency (“RF”) based charging for electronic devices, providing wire-free charging solutions for contact-based charging and at-a-distance charging, ultimately enabling charging with mobility under software control. Pursuant to our Strategic Alliance Agreement with Dialog Semiconductor plc (“Dialog”), Dialog manufactures and distributes integrated circuit (“IC”) products incorporating our RF-based wire-free charging technology. Dialog is our exclusive supplier of these ICs for the general market. We believe our proprietary technology can be utilized in a variety of devices, including wearables, hearing aids, earbuds, Bluetooth headsets, Internet of Things (“IoT”) devices, smartphones, tablets, e-book readers, keyboards, mice, remote controls, rechargeable lights, cylindrical batteries, medical devices and any other device with similar charging requirements that would otherwise need a battery or a connection to a power outlet.

We believe our technology is novel in its approach, in that we are developing a solution that charges electronic devices by surrounding them with a focused, radio frequency energy pocket (“RF energy pocket”). We are engineering solutions that we expect to enable the wire-free transmission of energy for contact-based applications as well as far field applications of up to 15 feet. We are also developing our Far Field transmitter

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

## [Index to Financial Statements](#)

technology to seamlessly mesh (like a network of Wi-Fi routers) to form a wire-free charging network that will allow users to charge their devices as they move from room-to-room or throughout a large space. To date, we have developed multiple transmitter prototypes in various form factors and power capabilities. We have also developed multiple receiver prototypes, including smartphone battery cases, toys, fitness trackers, Bluetooth headsets and tracking devices, as well as stand-alone receivers. We are also in the pre-production stage leading to mass production with early adopters of the WattUp technology to bring the first contact-based transmitters and compatible receivers to market.

When the company was founded, we recognized the need to build and design an enterprise-class network management and control software (“NMS”) system that was integral to the architecture and development of our wire-free charging technology. Our NMS system can be scaled up to control an enterprise consisting of thousands of devices or scaled down to work in a home or IoT environment.

The power, distance and mobility capabilities of the WattUp technology were validated by an internationally recognized independent testing lab in October 2015.

Our technology solution consists principally of transmitter and receiver ICs and novel antenna designs driven through innovative algorithms and software applications. We submitted our first IC design for wafer fabrication in November 2013 and have since been developing multiple generations of transmitter and receiver ICs, multiple antenna designs, as well as algorithms and software designs that we believe, in the aggregate, will optimize our technology by reducing size and cost, while increasing performance to a level that will enable our technology to be integrated into a broad spectrum of devices. We have developed a “building block” approach which allows us to scale our product implementations by combining multiple transmitter building blocks and/or multiple receiver building blocks to provide the power, distance, size and cost performance necessary to meet application requirements. While the technology is very scalable, in order to provide the necessary strategic focus to grow the company effectively, we have defined our market as devices that require 10 watts or less of power to charge. We intend to continue to invest in IC development as well as in the other components of the WattUp system to improve product performance, efficiency, cost-performance and miniaturization as required to grow the business and expand the ecosystem, while also distancing us from any potential competitors.

We believe that if our development, regulatory and commercialization efforts are successful, our transmitter and receiver technology will support a broad spectrum of charging solutions ranging from contact-based charging or charging at distances of a few millimeters (“near field”) to charging at distances of up to 15 feet (“far field”).

In February 2015, we signed a Development and License Agreement with one of the top consumer electronic companies in the world based on total worldwide revenues. The agreement is milestone-based and while there are no guarantees that the WattUp® technology will ever be integrated into our strategic partner’s consumer devices, we continue to progress the relationship as evidenced by our 2017 revenues from engineering services resulting from the achievement of certain milestones under the agreement. We anticipate continued progress with the relationship, which we expect will result in additional engineering services revenue and ultimately, if our technology is incorporated into one or more products by our strategic partner, potentially significant revenues based on the WattUp® technology being integrated into products shipped to consumers.

In February 2016, we began delivering evaluation kits to potential licensees to allow their respective engineering and product management departments to test and evaluate our technology. We expect that the testing and evaluations currently taking place will lead to products beginning to be shipped to consumers in 2018.

In November 2016, we entered into a Strategic Alliance Agreement with Dialog, pursuant to which Dialog manufactures and distributes IC products incorporating our wire-free charging technology. Dialog is our exclusive supplier of these products for the general market. Our WattUp technology will often use Dialog’s SmartBond® Bluetooth low energy solution as the out-of-band communications channel between the wireless transmitter and receiver. In most cases, Dialog’s power management technology will then be used to distribute

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

power from the WattUp receiver IC to the rest of the device while Dialog's AC/DC Rapid Charge™ power conversion technology delivers power to the wireless transmitter.

Our intellectual property strategy includes pursuing patent protection for new innovations. As of March 2, 2018, we had more than 170 pending patent and provisional patent applications. As of that date, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office and international patent offices had issued 77 patents and had notified us of the allowance of 50 additional patents. In addition to the inventions covered by these patents and patent applications, we have also identified specific inventions that we believe are novel and patentable. We intend to file for patent protection for the most valuable of these, and for other inventions that we expect to develop. Our strategy is to continually monitor the costs and benefits of each patent application and pursue those that we expect will best protect our business and expand the core value of the Company.

We have recruited and hired a seasoned management team with both private and public company experience and relevant industry experience to develop and execute our operating plan. In addition, we have identified and hired key engineering resources in the areas of IC development, antenna development, hardware, software and firmware engineering as well as integration and testing which will allow us to continue to expand our technology and intellectual property as well as meet the support requirements of our licensees.

Our common stock is quoted on The Nasdaq Stock Market under the symbol "WATT". As of March 2, 2018, we had 68 full-time employees, 60 of which were engineers. We were incorporated in Delaware in October 2012. Our corporate headquarters is located at 3590 North First Street, Suite 210, San Jose, CA 95134. Our website can be accessed at [www.energous.com](http://www.energous.com). The information contained on, or that may be obtained from our website, is not, and shall not be deemed to be, part of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**Our Technology**

The wire-free charging solution we are developing employs transmitter technology that creates a targeted RF energy pocket around a receiving device (mobile or fixed).

Figure 1 below shows a basic diagram of our solution. Today this solution is able to send RF energy from the transmitter to single or multiple devices.

Figure 1: Our Wire-Free Charging Solution



First, our proprietary transmitter locates the receiver(s) in space via technology we have developed using standard Bluetooth® communications. Next, the transmitter, through software control, generates a controlled and focused RF-waveform to create an RF energy pocket around the receiver(s). Receiver(s) equipped with our antennas and ICs, and controlled by our software, are able to harvest power from this focused RF energy pocket. We believe that these receivers will be incorporated into various devices such as smartphones, wearables, fitness trackers, keyboards and mice, cameras, tablets, toys, IoT devices, sensors, remote controls, medical devices and other small electronics which contain embedded batteries.

Our transmitter uses proprietary software algorithms to dynamically direct, focus and control our RF waveform as it transmits energy to a moving object (such as a user holding their mobile device as they walk around a room).

Our initial demonstration system was able to transmit energy to multiple devices within a radius of 15 feet. We believe our current generation ICs and those in development will also allow us to significantly reduce the size and cost of both our transmitters and our receivers, and to increase delivered power and efficiency and faster synchronization.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

## [Index to Financial Statements](#)

In January 2016, we announced a new Miniature WattUp Near Field Transmitter (now called WattUp Near Field Transmitter Technology) and a small form factor receiver, both of which were developed as a direct result of our efforts to reduce cost and size. The WattUp Near Field Transmitter Technology offers contact-based charging, for which we have received FCC approval, that allows for low power charging at up to five millimeter distances. Due to its low cost and small size, the miniature transmitter is anticipated to be bundled in-box with WattUp receiver enabled devices, replacing alternative charging solutions like power adapters and charging cables. The ability to provide a low cost, portable charging solution for receiver devices established portability for the WattUp solution, and we expect it to accelerate the adoption of our technology. In 2017, we announced the High-Power version of the WattUp nearfield transmitter that will have the ability to charge on contact at levels of up to 10 watts.

### **Our Competition**

There are many existing and commercially available methods for charging battery-powered devices, including wall plug-in charging, inductive charging, magnetic resonance charging, charging stations and more. To our knowledge, almost all consumer electronic devices equipped with a rechargeable battery come bundled with a method to charge the device (for example, a power cord). Studies indicate that the consumer has grown tired and frustrated with tethered charging solutions and that the market is poised and will be receptive to untethered wire-free power solutions like our WattUp technology. We believe that the positive market response and interest in the WattUp technology we have seen suggests that consumer electronic companies that develop products incorporating our technology will generate incremental sales and realize highly differentiated competitive advantages.

We believe our WattUp technology has a number of advantages compared to traditional charging technologies in terms of product spectrum, distance, size, cost, mobility, foreign object detection and portability. Further, our technology allows us to target a device and track that device if it moves, or is moving, and transmit focused energy to the targeted device to charge the device without having to remove the battery or plug in the device.

A variety of wireless charging technologies are on the market or under development today. These competitive technologies fall into the following categories:

**Magnetic Induction.** Magnetic induction uses a magnetic coil to create resonance, which can transmit energy over very short distances. Power is delivered as a function of coil size (the larger the coil, the more power), and coils must be directly paired (one receiver coil to one transmitter coil = directly coupled pair) within a typical distance of less than one inch. Products utilizing magnetic induction have been available for 10+ years in products such as rechargeable electronic toothbrushes.

**Magnetic Resonance.** Magnetic resonance is similar to magnetic induction, as it uses magnetic coils to transmit energy. This technology uses coils that range in size depending on the power levels being transmitted. It has the ability to transmit power at distances up to ~11 inches (30cm) which can be increased with the use of resonance repeaters.

**Conductive.** Conductive charging uses conductive power transfer to eliminate wires between the charger (often a charging mat) and the charging device. It requires the use of a charging board as the power transmitter to deliver the power, and a charging device, with a built-in receiver, to receive the power. This technology requires direct metal contact between the charging board and the receiver. Once the charging board recognizes the receiver, the charging begins.

**RF Harvesting.** Harvesting RF energy is at the core of our WattUp technology. RF harvesting typically utilizes directional antennas to target and deliver energy. To our knowledge, there are two other companies attempting to utilize a directional pocket of energy similar to that being developed by us.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

## [Index to Financial Statements](#)

Laser. Laser charging technology uses very short wavelengths of light to create a collimated beam that maintains its size over distance, using what is described as distributed resonance to deliver power to an optical receiver.

Ultrasound. Ultrasound charging technology converts electric energy into acoustic energy in the form of ultrasound waves. It then reconverts those waves through an “energy-harvesting” receiver.

### **Our Business Strategy**

Pursuant to our Strategic Alliance Agreement with Dialog, Dialog manufactures and distributes IC products incorporating our wire-free charging technology. Dialog is our exclusive supplier of these products for the general market. We believe there are several vertical markets with large volumes of potential annual sales that would benefit from our technology, and as a result, we may purchase our proprietary components through the Strategic Alliance Agreement. Our strategy is to support the development and proliferation of our WattUp® technology to form a ubiquitous wire-free charging ecosystem.

We believe that our greatest market opportunity lies in wire-free charging at a distance, which we anticipate may develop in much the same way as the Wi-Fi ecosystem has developed. The goal is to ensure interoperability between transmitters and receivers that are based on our technology, regardless of who made them, installed them into finished goods, or marketed them. The implementation of previous ubiquitous solutions, such as Wi-Fi and Bluetooth, illustrates our goal. For example, Wi-Fi routers, regardless of their designer or manufacturer, work with Wi-Fi receivers installed in consumer electronic devices, regardless of the manufacturer. Accordingly, we are following the same rollout strategy as Wi-Fi in that we endeavor to:

- Carefully select initial target markets;
- Build multiple silicon-based chips to advance the technology;
- Partner with leading product companies;
- Develop reference designs to reduce early adopter risks and foster adoption;
- Provide game-changing benefits to the consumer in terms of utility and convenience;
- Design initial iterations of the technology to be small but scalable implementations that are compatible on both a local and enterprise scale;
- Invest in ease of use;
- Develop a strategy to build out the ecosystem starting with the consumer and expanding to enterprise, industrial and military;
- Implement a plan to initially sell ICs migrating to a combination of selling ICs and integrating our device libraries into third-party silicon such as Bluetooth Low Energy and Power Management Chips;
- Develop and execute on a strategy to gain global regulatory approval for both contact and distance based charging; and
- Support a consortium like the AirFuel™ Alliance (AFA) that is expected to lead to a qualification process to ensure compatibility of our WattUp technology across vendors and develop a common user experience at the application level.

In order for our technology to become a ubiquitous solution for charging at a distance, we intend to pursue an ecosystem strategy for our technology, engaging not only potential licensees for our transmitter and receiver technologies, but also their upstream and downstream value chain partners. We intend to capitalize on our first-to-market advantage and prioritize protection of our intellectual property portfolio, as we believe this strategy will make it less likely that a competing platform will be able to gain a solid foothold in the RF-based wireless charging-at-a-distance market and compete with our technology in a meaningful way.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

## [Index to Financial Statements](#)

We believe our strategic relationship with Dialog will enable us to reap the benefits of our technology much faster and with greater penetration than by manufacturing and distributing products ourselves. We believe this strategic relationship allows us to solve the supply chain problem for major consumer electronic and IoT companies as well as leverage their highly regarded and experienced sales force while we concentrate our efforts and resources on engineering, development and commercialization projects to accelerate the introduction and adoption of the WattUp solution.

In order to engage with potential licensees of the WattUp technology, we have developed evaluation kits consisting of a transmitter and a receiver along with the enabling software to allow potential strategic partners to test the technology in their labs. The kits form a base “building block” component that is scalable to meet the needs of specific applications. We are developing processes and support capabilities to assist potential customers as they evaluate the technology and develop specific designs to incorporate it.

In selecting initial customers, we are employing a three-pronged strategy. First, we are engaging with smaller, more nimble early adopters who have short product cycles to ship fully integrated WattUp enabled devices to the consumer as quickly as possible. These customers are important from a technology validation standpoint. Simultaneously, we are engaging with larger, top tier customers who have the ability to ship WattUp enabled consumer and IoT devices in mass quantities beginning in the end of 2018. Finally, we continue to expand our customer based while we focus large opportunities with longer product cycles that should come to fruition in 2019 where we expect to see a significant increase in our revenues on the path to profitability.

Since we are developing a new electronic device charging paradigm for consumers, we expect the operational details of our strategy to continue to evolve as our technology matures and our engagements with strategic partners solidify. As a result, we expect to make operational course corrections as we steer the company towards our goal of a ubiquitous wire-free charging solution.

### **Our Target Markets**

We believe that our technology will be compelling to many vertical markets, each of which may have several potential customers. To focus our activities and see WattUp-enabled products in the hands of consumers as quickly as possible, we have selected initial target markets and customers based on market potential and time-to-market capabilities. As we continue to develop our technology, we intend to add more markets and partners.

We identify our early target markets in two categories, transmitter target markets and receiver target markets.

#### Transmitter Target Markets

Transmitters are devices that broadcast RF energy pockets that can be accessed by Watt-Up enabled receivers in consumer electronic devices. We believe our transmitter technology will be developed and released in three basic categories:

- Stand-alone transmitters that are either sold independently or bundled as part of a pairing with a WattUp-enabled receiver device;
- Transmitters that are integrated into third party devices like televisions, computer monitors, sound bars, refrigerator doors, etc.; and
- Transmitters that are integrated with Wi-Fi routers to form a single device that provides both connectivity and wire-free power for a particular area.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

## [Index to Financial Statements](#)

### *Stand-Alone Transmitters:*

We currently plan to release stand-alone transmitters in three categories:

### *Near Field WattUp Transmitters:*

Because of the distinct advantages compared to other existing forms of contact-based wireless charging including ease of manufacturing and relative ease of regulatory approval, we expect that products using our Near Field transmitter technology will be the first WattUp enabled products on the market. Our Near Field transmitters are ideally suited for a broad spectrum of devices such as wearables, IoT devices and other small electronics that require a small form factor receiver and a low-cost charging solution as well as larger, more power-hungry devices like smartphones, smart watches and tablets. These solutions will initially be one-to-one (one transmitter to one receiver) with follow-on versions being one transmitter to multiple receivers.

### *Mid Field WattUp Transmitters:*

We expect that our Mid Field WattUp transmitters will be geared to desktop and automotive markets and will likely have a range of a few centimeters to one meter. We also intend for the Mid Field transmitters to have tracking ability to support mobile applications and multiple receiving devices. Midsized WattUp transmitters may include small desktop and nightstand transmitters designed to send power at distances for consumer electronic and IoT devices. The same technology may also be integrated into third party devices such as computer monitors, nightstand consumer electronics, accessories such as low voltage portable battery chargers and integrated automotive applications.

### *Far Field WattUp Transmitters:*

Far Field WattUp transmitters are full featured transmitters with the power to charge multiple devices within a radius of up to 15 feet. We also expect that Far Field WattUp transmitters will have the ability to “pair” with other Far Field WattUp transmitters, allowing the user to create a large charging envelope encompassing many different rooms or large spaces while seamlessly providing charging to mobile devices that are moving through the coverage space. Far Field WattUp transmitters may also play a significant role in the powering of IoT devices that are fixed – such as security cameras and sensors. These may also be charged from a WattUp-enabled Wi-Fi router, which adds RF-based charging-at-a-distance functionality.

### *Transmitters Integrated into Third Party Devices:*

The “building block” core architecture developed for the WattUp technology is ideally suited to a broad spectrum of third party devices like televisions and refrigerator doors. The flexibility of the architecture in terms of size, power, distance, and cost affords Energo licensees the opportunity to match our technology with specific requirements and limitations typically found with complex integrations. For example, the WattUp technology could be integrated into the door of a small refrigerator typically found in college dorm rooms providing charging capabilities to mobile devices anywhere in the room. Further, the “pairing” capabilities of the transmitter technology could enable licensees to develop venue-specific consumer electronics products like integrated televisions that are paired with integrated picture frames to provide mobile charging across a large room such as an airport lounge.

### *Wi-Fi Routers*

We see the combination of the wire-free power router and the Wi-Fi router as a natural integration point and a synergistic application of both technologies. The WattUp wire-free power router shares a number of technical characteristics with Wi-Fi routers in that both devices operate in the airwaves in the unlicensed industrial, scientific and medical bands, both devices owe their success to the utility and convenience they bring to the

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

## [Index to Financial Statements](#)

consumer, both devices rely on antenna structures to send power and data, and both devices “pair” or provide hand off capabilities which allow for large “enabled” sites similar to a mesh network. We also believe that our technology may enhance the data signal of a Wi-Fi router, which we believe will provide an even stronger value proposition to wireless data router manufacturers.

The Wi-Fi router market has two segments: commercial and residential. The key differentiator between these segments is that commercial routers tend to have much more robust security features, including virtual private networks and advanced content filtering. We believe that our technology is applicable to both the commercial and residential Wi-Fi router markets based on the building block capabilities mentioned earlier that will enable the WattUp technology to effectively serve and support both markets.

In addition, the Wi-Fi router market has other key players. These include consumer electronics supply chain firms, including original equipment manufacturers (“OEMs”), original design manufacturers (“ODMs”), component manufacturers and branded consumer electronics firms. We believe that each of these categories of players can help to integrate our technology into a commercially available Wi-Fi router.

As part of our go-to-market strategy under the Strategic Alliance Agreement with Dialog, we are currently working with customers offering consumer and commercial applications of our technology.

### Receiver Target Markets

We believe there are a wide variety of potential uses for our receiver technology, including:

- Smartphones
- Hearing aids
- IOT devices
- Wearables
- Tablets
- Mice
- Gaming consoles and controllers
- Keyboards
- e-book readers
- Remote controls
- Sensors (such as thermostats)
- Toys
- Rechargeable batteries
- Rechargeable lights
- Automotive accessories
- Personal care products (such as toothbrushes or shavers)
- Retail inventory management (such as RFID tags)
- Hand-held industrial devices (such as scanners or keypads)
- Medical devices

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

## [Index to Financial Statements](#)

This list is meant for illustrative purposes only; we cannot guarantee that we will address any of these markets, and we may decide to address a market that is not on the above list. We intend to continuously evaluate our target markets and choose new markets based on factors including (but not limited to) time-to-market, market size and growth, and the strength of our value proposition for a specific application.

### **Key Strategic Partnership**

In January 2015, we signed a Development and License Agreement with a tier-one consumer electronics company to embed WattUp wire-free charging receiver technology in various products, including mobile consumer electronics and related accessories.

This Development and License Agreement, as amended, contains invention and development milestones requirements that we will need to achieve through fiscal 2018 and potentially beyond. We are entitled to receive development payments under the agreement, based on achievement of specified milestones.

During the development phase until one year after the first customer shipment of any WattUp enabled product within the partners portfolio of products, we will afford this customer a time to market advantage in the licensed product categories.

This agreement was last amended in December 2017 to allow us to market certain products that were previously restricted by the exclusivity terms of the agreement.

WattUp uses small form factor antennas that are formed using the existing device's printed circuit board, removing the need for larger, more expensive coils. This enables broader adoption of wireless charging in a larger range of battery-powered devices, such as smartphones, tablets, IoT devices, small form factor wearables, gaming and Virtual Reality (VR)/Augmented Reality (AR) devices.

We believe this agreement, or one like it with another top tier consumer electronics company, presents an opportunity to accelerate critical mass adoption for WattUp® wire-free power. We also believe that partners are the key to adoption and critical mass by the broad distribution of embedded or stand-alone transmitters into other consumer electronics devices. Finally, having this wide adoption on both the transmitter and the receiver side should create demand for broad adoption of our technology from circles outside of our key strategic partners.

In November 2016, we entered into a Strategic Alliance Agreement with Dialog for the manufacture and distribution of IC products incorporating our wire-free charging technology. Dialog is our exclusive supplier of these products for specified fields of use. Our WattUp chipsets are ordered through and manufactured by Dialog, carry the Dialog brand and are shipped and supported by Dialog. Dialog agreed to not distribute, sell or work with any third party to develop any competing products without our approval. Energous and Dialog agreed on a revenue sharing arrangement and will collaborate on the commercialization of licensed products based on a mutually-agreed upon plan.

Our WattUp technology uses Dialog's SmartBond® Bluetooth low energy solution as the out-of-band communications channel between the wireless transmitter and receiver. Dialog's power management technology is used to distribute power from the WattUp receiver IC to the rest of the device while Dialog's AC/DC Rapid Charge™ power conversion technology delivers power to the wireless transmitter.

### **Research and Development**

Research and development costs accounted for approximately 66%, 69% and 63% of our total operating expenses for 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively. Our total research and development expenses were \$33.2 million, \$32.8 million, and \$18.8 million for the 2017, 2016, and 2015, respectively. Research and development expenses are expected to increase in the future as we concentrate our efforts and resources on the commercialization of our technology.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**Our Intellectual Property**

As a company primarily focused on licensing, we expect that our most valuable asset will be our intellectual property. This includes U.S. and foreign patents, patent applications and know-how. We have implemented an aggressive intellectual property strategy and are continuing to pursue patent protection for new innovations. As of March 2, 2018, we had more than 170 pending patent applications in the U.S. and abroad. Additionally, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office and international patent offices have issued 77 patents and notified us of the allowance of 50 additional patents applications. In addition to the inventions covered by these patents and patent applications, we have identified a significant number of additional specific inventions we believe are novel and patentable. We intend to file for patent protection for the most valuable of these, as well as for other new inventions that we expect to develop. Our strategy is to continually monitor the costs and benefits of each patent application and pursue those that will best protect our business and expand the core value of the Company.

**Government Regulation**

Our wire-free charging technology involves the transmission of power using RF energy waves, which is subject to regulation by the Federal Communications Commission (“FCC”), and may be subject to regulation by other federal, state, local and international agencies. We believe our technology is safe, and we continue to consult with the FCC and other regulatory bodies to establish a process by which devices incorporating WattUp® technology can secure required approvals.

As part of the regulatory approval process, devices incorporating the WattUp® technology will need to obtain approvals under both FCC Part 15 and FCC Part 18, depending on specific application. Energous has received Part 15 and Part 18 FCC grants for WattUp enabled products and anticipates future domestic and international approvals for new and updated designs.

**Current FCC Approvals:**

<b><u>FCC ID</u></b>	<b><u>Description</u></b>	<b><u>Grant Date</u></b>
2ADNG-MS300A	WPT Client Device with BLE 913 MHz	01/05/2018
2ADNG-NF130	RF Wireless Charger and Receiver 5.8 GHz	05/02/2017
2ADNG-MS300A	Digital Transmission System WPT Client Device with BLE 2.4 GHz	01/05/2018
2ADNG-MT100	Close Coupled 5.8 GHz Charger Pad	05/24/2016
2ADNG-MS300	Wireless Charger 913 MHz	12/26/2017
2ADNG-MLA1599	Digital Transmission System Bluetooth Accessory 2.4GHz	12/30/2014
2ADNG-NF130	Digital Transmission System RF Wireless Charger and Receiver 2.4 GHz	05/02/2017
2ADNG-MS300	Wireless Charger 2.4 GHz	12/26/2017

**Employees**

As of March 2, 2018, we had 68 full-time employees. None of these employees are covered by a collective bargaining agreement, and we believe our relationship with our employees is good. We also employ consultants, including technical advisors, on an as-needed basis to supplement existing staff. Consultants and technical advisors provide us with expertise in electrical engineering, software development and other specialized areas of engineering and science.

**Item 1A. Risk Factors**

*We are subject to many risks that may harm our business, prospects, results of operations and financial condition. This discussion highlights some of the risks that might adversely affect our future operating results in material ways. We believe these are the risks and uncertainties that are the most important ones we face. We*

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

## [Index to Financial Statements](#)

*cannot be certain that we will successfully address these risks, and if we are unable to address them, our business may not grow, our stock price may suffer and you could lose the value of your investment in our company. Other risks and uncertainties that we do not currently recognize as material risks, or that are similar to risks faced by other companies in our industry, may also impair our business, prospects, results of operations and financial condition. The risks discussed below include forward-looking statements, and our actual results may differ substantially from what is in these forward-looking statements.*

### **Risks Related to Our Business**

***We have no history of generating meaningful product revenue, and we may never achieve or maintain profitability.***

We have a limited operating history upon which investors may rely in evaluating our business and its prospects. We have generated only very limited revenues to date and we have a history of losses from operations. As of December 31, 2017, we had an accumulated deficit of approximately \$174 million. Our ability to generate revenues on a more reliable and larger scale, and to achieve profitability, will depend on our ability to execute our business plan, complete the development of our technology, and incorporate it into products that customers wish to buy, and to do so rapidly with appropriate financing if necessary. If we are unable to generate revenues of significant scale to cover our costs of doing business, our losses will continue and we may not achieve profitability, which could negatively impact the value of your investment in our securities.

***Terms of our Development and License Agreement with a tier-one consumer electronics company could inhibit potential licensees from working with us in specific markets.***

We have entered into a Development and License Agreement with a tier-one consumer electronics company to embed our WattUp wire-free charging receiver and transmitter technology in various products, including mobile consumer electronics and related accessories. This agreement provides our strategic partner a time-to-market advantage during the development and until one year after the first customer shipment for specified WattUp-enabled consumer products. This may inhibit other potential licensees of our technology from engaging with us on competing consumer products, and may cause them to seek solutions offered by other companies, which could have a negative impact on our revenue opportunities and financial results.

***We may be unable to demonstrate the feasibility of our technology.***

We have developed working prototypes of products using our technology, but additional research and development is required to commercialize our technology for mid field and far field applications so that it can be successfully integrated into commercial products. Our research and development efforts remain subject to the risks associated with the development of new products that are based on emerging technologies, such as unanticipated technical problems, the inability to identify products utilizing our technology that will be in demand with customers, getting our technology designed in to those products, designing new products for manufacturability, and achieving acceptable price points for final products. Our technology must also satisfy customer expectations and be suitable for them to use in consumer applications. Any delays in developing our technology that arise from factors of this sort would aggravate our exposure to the risk of having inadequate capital to fund the research and development needed to complete development of these products. Technical problems causing delays would cause us to incur additional expenses that would increase our operating losses. If we experience significant delays in developing our technology and products based on it for use in potential commercial applications, particularly after incurring significant expenditures, our business may fail and you could lose the value of your investment in our company. To our knowledge, the technological concepts we are applying have never previously been successfully applied. If we fail to develop practical and economical commercial products based on our technology, our business may fail and you could lose the value of your investment in our stock.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

***The FCC may deny approval for our technology, and future legislative or regulatory changes may impair our business.***

Our wire-free charging technology involves transmission of power using radio frequency (RF) energy, which is subject to regulation by the Federal Communications Commission, or FCC. It may also be subject to regulation by other federal, state and local agencies. We design our technology to operate in a RF band that is also used for Wi-Fi routers and other wireless consumer electronics. Some customer applications may require us to develop our technology to work at different frequencies. The FCC grants product approval if, among other things, the human exposure to radio frequency emissions is below specified thresholds. For products that transmit more power, additional FCC approvals are required. There can be no assurance that devices incorporating our technology will receive FCC approval or that other governmental approvals will not be required. Our efforts to obtain FCC approval for devices using our technology is costly and time consuming. If approvals are not obtained in a timely and cost-efficient manner, our business and operating results would be materially harmed. In addition, new laws or regulations governing our technology could impose restrictions on us that could require us to redesign our technology or future products, or that are difficult or impracticable to comply with, all of which would adversely affect our revenues and financial results.

***We depend upon our strategic relationship with Dialog Semiconductor, a provider of electronics products, and there can be no assurance that we will achieve the expected benefits of this relationship.***

We have entered into a strategic cooperation agreement with Dialog Semiconductor, a provider of electronics products, pursuant to which we licensed our WattUp technology to Dialog and Dialog became the exclusive provider of our technology. We intend to leverage Dialog's sales and distribution channels and its operational capabilities to accelerate market adoption of our technology, while we focus our resources on research and development of our technology. There can be no assurance that Dialog will promote our technology successfully, or that it will be successful in producing and distributing related products to our customers' specifications. Dialog may have other priorities or may encounter difficulties in its own business that interfere with the success of our relationship. If this strategic relationship does not work as we intend, then we may be required to seek an arrangement with another strategic partner, or to develop internal capabilities, which will require a commitment of management time and our financial resources to identify a replacement strategic partner, or to develop our own production and distribution capabilities. As a result, we may be unable without undue expense to replace this agreement with one or more new strategic relationships to promote and provide our technology.

***We may require additional financing in order to achieve our business plans, and there is no guarantee that it will be available on acceptable terms, or at all.***

We may not have sufficient funds to fully implement our business plans. We expect that we will need to raise additional capital through new financings, even if we begin to generate meaningful commercial revenue. Such financings could include equity financing, which may be dilutive to stockholders, or debt financing, which could restrict our ability to borrow from other sources. In addition, such securities may contain rights, preferences or privileges senior to those of current stockholders. As a result of economic conditions, general global economic uncertainty, political change, and other factors, we do not know whether additional capital will be available when needed, or that, if available, we will be able to obtain additional capital on reasonable terms. If we are unable to raise additional capital due to the volatile global financial markets, general economic uncertainty or other factors, we may be required to curtail development of our technology or reduce operations as a result, or to sell or dispose of assets. Any inability to raise adequate funds on commercially reasonable terms could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition, including the possibility that a lack of funds could cause our business to fail and liquidate with little or no return to investors.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

## [Index to Financial Statements](#)

***Expanding our business operations as we intend will impose new demands on our financial, technical, operational and management resources.***

To date we have operated primarily in the research and development phase of our business. If we are successful, we will need to expand our business operations, which will impose new demands on our financial, technical, operational and management resources. If we do not upgrade our technical, administrative, operating and financial control systems, or the unexpected expansion difficulties arise, including issues relating to our research and development activities and retention of experienced scientists, managers and engineers, could have a material adverse effect on our business, our results of operations and financial condition, and our ability to timely execute our business plan. If we are unable to implement these actions in a timely manner, our results may be adversely affected.

***If products incorporating our technology are launched commercially but do not achieve widespread market acceptance, we will not be able to generate the revenue necessary to support our business.***

Market acceptance of a wire-free charging system as a preferred method to recharge low-power fixed and mobile electronic devices will be crucial to our continued success. The following factors, among others, may affect the rate and level of market acceptance of products in our industry:

- the price of products incorporating our technology relative to other products or competing technologies;
- the effectiveness of sales and marketing efforts of our commercialization partners;
- the support and rate of acceptance of our technology and solutions with our joint development partners;
- perceptions, by individual and enterprise users, of our technology's convenience, safety, efficiency and benefits compared to competing technologies;
- press and blog coverage, social media coverage, and other publicity factors that are not within our control; and
- regulatory developments.

If we are unable to achieve or maintain market acceptance of our technology, and if related products do not win widespread market acceptance, our business will be significantly harmed.

***If products incorporating our technology are commercially launched, we may experience seasonality or other unevenness in our financial results in consumer markets or a long and variable sales cycle in enterprise markets.***

Our strategy depends on the development of successful commercial products and effectively licensing our technology into the consumer, enterprise and commercial markets. We will need to understand procurement and buying cycles to be successful in licensing our technology. We anticipate it is possible that demand for our technology could vary similarly with the market for products with which our technology may be used, for example, the market for new purchases of laptops, tablet, mobile phones, gaming systems, toys, wearables and the like. Such consumer markets are often seasonal, with peaks in and around the December holiday season and the August-September back-to-school season. Enterprises and commercial markets may have annual or other budgeting and buying cycles that could affect us, and, particularly if we are designated as a capital improvement project, we may have a long or unpredictable sales cycle.

***We may not be able to achieve all the features we seek to include in our technology.***

We have developed working prototypes of commercial products that utilize our technology. Additional features and performance specifications we seek to include in our technology have not yet been developed. For example, some customer applications may require specific combinations of cost, footprint, efficiencies and

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

## [Index to Financial Statements](#)

capabilities at various charging power levels and distances as part of an overall system. We believe our research and development efforts will yield additional functionality and capabilities over time. However, there can be no assurance that we will be successful in achieving all the features we are targeting and our inability to do so may limit the appeal of our technology to consumers.

***Future products based on our technology may require the user to purchase additional products to use with existing devices. To the extent these additional purchases are inconvenient, the adoption of our technology under development or other future products could be slowed, which would harm our business.***

For rechargeable devices that utilize our receiver technology, the technology may be embedded in a sleeve, case or other enclosure. For example, products such as remote controls or toys equipped with replaceable AA size or other batteries would need to be outfitted with enhanced batteries and other hardware enabling the devices to be rechargeable by our system. In each case, an end user would be required to retrofit the device with a receiver and may be required to upgrade the battery technology used with the device (unless, for example, compatible battery technology and a receiver are built into the device). These additional steps and expenses may offset the convenience for some users and discourage some users from purchasing our technology under development or other future products. Such factors may inhibit adoption of our technology, which could harm our business. We have not developed an enhanced battery for use in devices with our technology, and our ability to enable use of our technology with devices that require an enhanced battery will depend on our ability to develop a commercial version of such a battery that could be manufactured at a reasonable cost. If we fail to develop or enable a commercially practicable enhanced battery, our business could be harmed, and we may need to change our strategy and target markets.

***Laboratory conditions differ from field conditions, which could affect the effectiveness of our technology under development or other future products. Failures to move from laboratory to the field effectively would harm our business.***

When used in the field, our technology may not perform as expected based on test results and performance of our technology under controlled laboratory circumstances. For example, in the laboratory a configuration of obstructions of transmission will be arranged in some fashion, but in the field receivers may be obstructed in many different and unpredictable ways over which we have no control. These conditions may significantly diminish the power received at the receiver or the effective range of the transmitter, because the RF energy from the transmitter may be absorbed by obscuring or blocking material or may need to be reflected off a surface to reach the receiver, making the transmission distance longer than straight-line distances. The failure of products using our technology or other future products to be able to meet the demands of users in the field could harm our business.

***Safety concerns and legal action by private parties may affect our business.***

We believe that our technology is safe. However, it is possible that we could discover safety issues with our technology or that some people may be concerned with wire-free transmission of power in a manner that has occurred with some other wireless technologies as they were put into residential and commercial use, such as the safety concerns that were raised by some regarding the use of cellular telephones and other devices to transmit data wirelessly in close proximity to the human body. In addition, while we believe our technology is safe, users of our technology under development or other future products who suffer medical ailments may blame the use of products incorporating our technology, as occurred with a small number of users of cellular telephones. A discovery of safety issues relating to our technology could have a material adverse effect on our business and any legal action against us claiming our technology caused harm could be expensive, divert management and adversely affect us or cause our business to fail, whether or not such legal actions were ultimately successful.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

*Our industry is subject to intense competition and rapid technological change, which may result in technology that is superior to ours. If we are unable to keep pace with changes in the marketplace and the direction of technological innovation and customer demands, our technology and products may become less useful or obsolete and our operating results will suffer.*

The consumer electronics industry in general, and the power, recharging and alternative recharging segments in particular, are subject to intense and increasing competition and rapidly evolving technologies. Because products incorporating our technology are expected to have long development cycles, we must anticipate changes in the marketplace and the direction of technological innovation and customer demands. To compete successfully, we will need to demonstrate the advantages of our products and technologies over established alternatives, and over newer methods of power delivery. Traditional wall plug-in recharging remains an inexpensive alternative to our technology. Directly competing technologies such as inductive charging, magnetic resonance charging, conductive charging, ultrasound and other yet unidentified solutions may have greater consumer acceptance than the technologies we have developed. Furthermore, certain competitors may have greater resources than we have and may be better established in the market than we are. We cannot be certain which other companies may have already decided to or may in the future choose to enter our markets. For example, consumer electronics products companies may invest substantial resources in wireless power or other recharging technologies and may decide to enter our target markets. Successful developments of competitors that result in new approaches for recharging could reduce the attractiveness of our products and technologies or render them obsolete.

Our future success will depend in large part on our ability to establish and maintain a competitive position in current and future technologies. Rapid technological development may render our technology or future products based on our technology obsolete. Many of our competitors have greater corporate, financial, operational, sales and marketing resources than we have, as well as more experience in research and development. We cannot assure you that our competitors will not develop or market technologies that are more effective or commercially attractive than our products or that would render our technologies and products obsolete. We may not have or the financial resources, technical expertise, marketing, distribution or support capabilities to compete successfully in the future. Our success will depend in large part on our ability to maintain a competitive position with our technologies.

Our competitive position also depends on our ability to:

- generate widespread awareness, acceptance and adoption by the consumer and enterprise markets of our technology under development and future products;
- design a product that may be sold at an acceptable price point;
- develop new or enhanced technologies or features that improve the convenience, efficiency, safety or perceived safety, and productivity of our technology under development and future products;
- properly identify customer needs and deliver new products or product enhancements to address those needs;
- limit the time required from proof of feasibility to routine production;
- limit the timing and cost of regulatory approvals;
- attract and retain qualified personnel;
- protect our inventions with patents or otherwise develop proprietary products and processes; and
- secure sufficient capital resources to expand both our continued research and development, and sales and marketing efforts.

If our technology does not compete well based on these or other factors, our business could be harmed.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

## [Index to Financial Statements](#)

***It is difficult and costly to protect our intellectual property and our proprietary technologies, and we may not be able to ensure their protection.***

Our success depends significantly on our ability to obtain, maintain and protect our proprietary rights to the technologies used in products incorporating our technologies. Patents and other proprietary rights provide uncertain protections, and we may be unable to protect our intellectual property. For example, we may be unsuccessful in defending our patents and other proprietary rights against third party challenges. If we do not have the resources to defend our intellectual property, the value of our intellectual property and our licensed technology will decline, threatening our potential revenue and results of operations.

***We depend upon a combination of patent, trade secrets, copyright and trademark laws to protect our intellectual property and technology.***

We rely on a combination of patents, trade secrets, copyright and trademark laws, nondisclosure agreements and other contractual provisions and technical security measures to protect our intellectual property rights. These measures may not be adequate to safeguard our technology. If they do not protect our rights adequately, third parties could use our technology, and our ability to compete in the market would be reduced. Although we are attempting to obtain patent coverage for our technology where available and where we believe appropriate, there are aspects of the technology for which patent coverage may never be sought or received. We may not possess the resources to or may not choose to pursue patent protection outside the United States or any or every country other than the United States where we may eventually decide to sell our future products. Our ability to prevent others from making or selling duplicate or similar technologies will be impaired in those countries in which we have no patent protection. Although we have a number of patent applications on file in the United States, the patents may not issue, may issue only with limited coverage or may issue and be subsequently successfully challenged by others and held invalid or unenforceable.

Similarly, even if patents are issued based on our applications or future applications, any issued patents may not provide us with any competitive advantages. Competitors may be able to design around our patents or develop products that provide outcomes comparable or superior to ours. Our patents may be held invalid or unenforceable as a result of legal challenges by third parties, and others may challenge the inventorship or ownership of our patents and pending patent applications. In addition, if we secure protection in countries outside the United States, the laws of some foreign countries may not protect our intellectual property rights to the same extent as do the laws of the United States. In the event a competitor infringes upon our patent or other intellectual property rights, enforcing those rights may be difficult and time consuming. Even if successful, litigation to enforce our intellectual property rights or to defend our patents against challenge could be expensive and time consuming and could divert our management's attention. We may not have sufficient resources to enforce our intellectual property rights or to defend our patents against a challenge.

Our strategy is to deploy our technology into the market by licensing patent and other proprietary rights to third parties and customers. Disputes with our licensors may arise regarding the scope and content of these licenses. Further, our ability to expand into additional fields with our technologies may be restricted by existing licenses or licenses we may grant to third parties in the future.

The policies we use to protect our trade secrets may not be effective in preventing misappropriation of our trade secrets by others. In addition, confidentiality agreements executed by our employees, consultants and advisors may not be enforceable or may not provide meaningful protection for our trade secrets or other proprietary information in the event of unauthorized use or disclosure. Litigating a trade secret claim is expensive and time consuming, and the outcome is unpredictable. Moreover, our competitors may independently develop equivalent knowledge methods and know-how. If we are unable to protect our intellectual property rights, we may be unable to prevent competitors from using our own inventions and intellectual property to compete against us, and our business may be harmed.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

***We may be subject to patent infringement or other intellectual property lawsuits that could be costly to defend.***

Because our industry is characterized by competing intellectual property, we may become involved in litigation based on claims that we have violated the intellectual property rights of others. Determining whether a product infringes a patent involves complex legal and factual issues, and the outcome of patent litigation actions is often uncertain. No assurance can be given that third party patents containing claims covering our products, parts of our products, technology or methods do not exist, have not been filed, or could not be filed or issued. Because of the number of patents issued and patent applications filed in our technical areas or fields (including some pertaining specifically to wireless charging technologies), our competitors or other third parties may assert that our products and technology and the methods we employ in the use of our products and technology are covered by United States or foreign patents held by them. In addition, because patent applications can take many years to issue and because publication schedules for pending applications vary by jurisdiction, there may be applications now pending which may result in issued patents that our technology under development or other future products would infringe. Also, because the claims of published patent applications can change between publication and patent grant, there may be published patent applications that may ultimately issue with claims that we infringe. There could also be existing patents that one or more of our technologies, products or parts may infringe and of which we are unaware. As the number of competitors in the market for wire-free power and alternative recharging solutions increases, and as the number of patents issued in this area grows, the possibility of patent infringement claims against us increases. Some of our competitors may be able to sustain the costs of complex patent litigation more effectively than we can because they have substantially greater resources. In addition, any uncertainties resulting from the initiation and continuation of any litigation could have a material adverse effect on our ability to raise the funds necessary to continue our operations.

In the event that we become subject to a patent infringement or other intellectual property lawsuit and if the relevant patents or other intellectual property were upheld as valid and enforceable and we were found to infringe or violate the terms of a license to which we are a party, we could be prevented from selling any infringing products of ours unless we could obtain a license or were able to redesign the product to avoid infringement. If we were unable to obtain a license or successfully redesign, we might be prevented from selling our technology under development or other future products. If there is a determination that we have infringed the intellectual property rights of a competitor or other person, we may be required to pay damages, pay a settlement, or pay ongoing royalties, or be enjoined. In these circumstances, we may be unable to sell our products or license our technology at competitive prices or at all, and our business and operating results could be harmed.

***We could become subject to product liability claims, product recalls, and warranty claims that could be expensive, divert management's attention and harm our business.***

Our business exposes us to potential liability risks that are inherent in the marketing and sale of products used by consumers. We may be held liable if our technology under development now or in the future causes injury or death or are found otherwise unsuitable during usage. Our technology under development incorporates sophisticated components and computer software. Complex software can contain errors, particularly when first introduced. In addition, new products or enhancements may contain undetected errors or performance problems that, despite testing, are discovered only after installation. While we believe our technology is safe, users could allege or possibly prove defects (some of which could be alleged or proved to cause harm to users or others) because we design our technology to perform complex functions involving RF energy, possibly in close proximity to users. A product liability claim, regardless of its merit or eventual outcome, could result in significant legal defense costs. The coverage limits of our insurance policies we may choose to purchase to cover related risks may not be adequate to cover future claims. If sales of products incorporating our technology increase or we suffer future product liability claims, we may be unable to maintain product liability insurance in the future at satisfactory rates or with adequate amounts. A product liability claim, any product recalls or excessive warranty claims, whether arising from defects in design or manufacture or otherwise, could negatively affect our sales or require a change in the design or manufacturing process, any of which could harm our reputation and business, harm our relationship with licensors of our products, result in a decline in revenue and harm our business.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

## [Index to Financial Statements](#)

In addition, if a product that we or a strategic partner design is defective, whether due to design or manufacturing defects, improper use of the product or other reasons, we or our strategic partners may be required to notify regulatory authorities and/or to recall the product. A required notification to a regulatory authority or recall could result in an investigation by regulatory authorities of products incorporating our technology, which could in turn result in required recalls, restrictions on the sale of such products or other penalties. The adverse publicity resulting from any of these actions could adversely affect the perception of our customers and potential customers. These investigations or recalls, especially if accompanied by unfavorable publicity, could result in our incurring substantial costs, losing revenues and damaging our reputation, each of which would harm our business.

### ***We are subject to risks associated with our utilization of consultants.***

To improve productivity and accelerate our development efforts while we build out our own engineering team, we may use experienced consultants to assist in selected development projects. We take steps to monitor and regulate the performance of these independent third parties. However, arrangements with third party service providers may make our operations vulnerable if these consultants fail to satisfy their obligations to us as a result of their performance, changes in their own operations, financial condition, or other matters outside of our control. Effective management of our consultants is important to our business and strategy. The failure of our consultants to perform as anticipated could result in substantial costs, divert management's attention from other strategic activities, or create other operational or financial problems for us. Terminating or transitioning arrangements with key consultants could result in additional costs and a risk of operational delays, potential errors and possible control issues as a result of the termination or during the transition.

### ***If we are not able to secure advantageous license agreements for our technology, our business and results of operations will be adversely affected.***

We pursue the licensing of our technology as a primary means of revenue generation. We believe there are many companies that would be interested in implementing our technology into their devices. We have entered into one product development and license agreement with a tier-one consumer electronics company that has the potential to yield license revenue. We have also entered into a number of evaluation and joint development agreements with potential strategic partners. However, these agreements do not commit either party to a long-term relationship and any of these parties may disengage with us at any time. Creating a licensing business relationship often takes a substantial effort, as we expect to have to convince the counterparty of the efficacy of our technology, meet design and manufacturing requirements, satisfy marketing and product needs, and comply with selection, review and contracting requirements. There can be no assurance that we will be able to gain access to potential licensing partners, or that they will ultimately decide to integrate our technology with their products. We may not be able to secure license agreements with customers on advantageous terms, and the timing and volume of revenue earned from license agreements will be outside of our control. If the license agreements we enter into do not prove to be advantageous to us, our business and results of operations will be adversely affected.

### ***Our business is subject to data security risks, including security breaches.***

We, or our third-party vendors on our behalf, collect, process, store and transmit substantial amounts of information, including information about our customers. We take steps to protect the security and integrity of the information we collect, process, store or transmit, but there is no guarantee that inadvertent or unauthorized use or disclosure will not occur or that third parties will not gain unauthorized access to this information despite such efforts. Security breaches, computer malware, computer hacking attacks and other compromises of information security measures have become more prevalent in the business world and may occur on our systems or those of our vendors in the future. Large Internet companies and websites have from time to time disclosed sophisticated and targeted attacks on portions of their websites, and an increasing number have reported such attacks resulting in breaches of their information security. We and our third-party vendors are at risk of suffering from similar

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

## [Index to Financial Statements](#)

attacks and breaches. Although we take steps to maintain confidential and proprietary information on our information systems, these measures and technology may not adequately prevent security breaches and we rely on our third-party vendors to take appropriate measures to protect the security and integrity of the information on those information systems. Because techniques used to obtain unauthorized access to or to sabotage information systems change frequently and may not be known until launched against us, we may be unable to anticipate or prevent these attacks. In addition, a party who is able to illicitly obtain a customer's identification and password credentials may be able to access the customer's account and certain account data.

Any actual or suspected security breach or other compromise of our security measures or those of our third-party vendors, whether as a result of hacking efforts, denial-of-service attacks, viruses, malicious software, break-ins, phishing attacks, social engineering or otherwise, could harm our reputation and business, damage our brand and make it harder to retain existing customers or acquire new ones, require us to expend significant capital and other resources to address the breach, and result in a violation of applicable laws, regulations or other legal obligations. Our insurance policies may not be adequate to reimburse us for direct losses caused by any such security breach or indirect losses due to resulting customer attrition.

We rely on email and other messaging services to connect with our existing and potential customers. Our customers may be targeted by parties using fraudulent spoofing and phishing emails to misappropriate passwords, payment information or other personal information or to introduce viruses through Trojan horse programs or otherwise through our customers' computers, smartphones, tablets or other devices. Despite our efforts to mitigate the effectiveness of such malicious email campaigns through product improvements, spoofing and phishing may damage our brand and increase our costs. Any of these events or circumstances could materially adversely affect our business, financial condition and operating results.

***We are highly dependent on key members of our executive management team. Our inability to retain these individuals could impede our business plan and growth strategies, which could have a negative impact on our business and the value of your investment.***

Our ability to implement our business plan depends, to a critical extent, on the continued efforts and services of a very small number of key executives. If we lose the services of any of these persons, we could be required to expend significant time and money in the pursuit of replacements, which may result in a delay in the implementation of our business plan and plan of operations. If necessary, we can give no assurance that we could find satisfactory replacements for these individuals on terms that would not be unduly expensive or burdensome to us. We do not currently carry a key-man life insurance policy that would assist us in recouping our costs in the event of the death or disability of any of these executives.

***Our success and growth depend on our ability to attract, integrate and retain high-level engineering talent.***

Because of the highly specialized and complex nature of our business, our success depends on our ability to attract, hire, train, integrate and retain high-level engineering talent. Competition for such personnel is intense because we compete for talent against many large profitable companies and our inability to adequately staff our operations with highly qualified and well-trained engineers could render us less efficient and impede our ability to develop and deliver a commercial product. Such a competitive market could put upward pressure on labor costs for engineering talent. We may incur significant costs to attract and retain highly qualified talent, and we may lose new employees to our competitors or other technology companies before we realize the benefit of our investment in recruiting and training them. Volatility or lack of performance in our stock price may also affect our ability to attract and retain qualified personnel.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**Risks Related to Ownership of Our Common Stock**

*You may lose all of your investment.*

Investing in our common stock involves a high degree of risk. As an investor, you may never recoup all, or even part of, your investment and you may never realize any return on your investment. You must be prepared to lose all of your investment.

*Our stock price is likely to continue to be volatile.*

The market price of the common stock has fluctuated significantly since it was first listed on The Nasdaq Stock Market in 2014. Our common stock has experienced an intra-day trading high of \$33.50 per share and a low of \$6.91 per share over the last 52 weeks. The price of our common stock is likely to continue to fluctuate significantly in response to many factors that are beyond our control, including:

- Regulatory announcements, such as the recent FCC approval of our mid-range transmitter and receiver technology;
- actual or anticipated variations in operating results;
- the limited number of holders of the common stock;
- changes in the economic performance and/or market valuations of other technology companies;
- our announcements of significant strategic partnerships, regulatory developments and other events;
- announcements by other companies in the wire-free charging space;
- articles published or rumors circulated by third parties regarding our business, technology or development partners;
- additions or departures of key personnel; and
- sales or other transactions involving our capital stock.

*We are an “emerging growth company,” and are able to take advantage of reduced disclosure requirements, excluding applicable to emerging growth companies, which could make our common stock less attractive to investors.*

We are an “emerging growth company,” as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012, and, for as long as we continue to be an emerging growth company, we intend to take advantage of exemptions from various reporting requirements, including, but not limited to, not being required to provide auditor attestation of our internal controls, reduced disclosure about executive compensation, and exemption from the requirement to hold a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation. However, we chose not to delay compliance with new or revised financial accounting standards. We could be an emerging growth company until 2019 or, if earlier, the year when the market value of our common stock held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700.0 million as of the last business day of our most recent second quarter end. If investors find our common stock less attractive as a result of reduced disclosure of this sort, there may be a less active trading market for our common stock and our stock price may decline.

*If we are unable to maintain effective internal control over financial reporting, investors may lose confidence in the accuracy of our financial reports.*

As a public company, we are required to maintain internal control over financial reporting and to report any material weaknesses in such internal controls. Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act requires that we evaluate and determine the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting. Although our management has

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

### [Index to Financial Statements](#)

determined that our internal control over financial reporting was effective as of December 31, 2017, we cannot assure you that we not identify a material weakness in our internal control in the future.

If we have a material weakness in our internal control over financial reporting in the future, we may not detect errors on a timely basis. If we are not able to comply with the requirements of Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, or if we identify a material weakness in our internal control over financial reporting in the future, it could harm our operating results, cause us to fail to meet our SEC reporting obligations or Nasdaq listing requirements, adversely affect our reputation, cause our stock price to decline or result in inaccurate financial reporting or material misstatements in our annual or interim financial statements. Further, if there are material weaknesses or failures in our ability to meet any of the requirements related to the maintenance and reporting of our internal controls such as Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, investors may lose confidence in the accuracy and completeness of our financial reports and that could cause the price of our common stock to decline. We could become subject to investigations by Nasdaq, the SEC or other regulatory authorities, which could require additional management attention and which could adversely affect our business.

In addition, our internal control over financial reporting will not prevent or detect all errors and fraud. Because of the inherent limitations in all control systems, no evaluation of controls can provide absolute assurance that misstatements due to error or fraud will not occur or that all control issues and instances of fraud will be detected.

***We have not paid dividends in the past and have no immediate plans to pay dividends.***

We plan to reinvest all of our earnings, to the extent we have earnings, in order to market our products and technology and to cover operating costs and to otherwise become and remain competitive. We do not plan to pay any cash dividends with respect to our securities in the foreseeable future. We cannot assure you that we would, at any time, generate sufficient surplus cash that would be available for distribution to the holders of our common stock as a dividend.

***Concentration of ownership among our existing executive officers, directors and significant stockholders may prevent new investors from influencing significant corporate decisions.***

All decisions with respect to the management of our company are made by our board of directors and our officers, who beneficially own approximately 7.6% of our common stock collectively. In addition, our greater than 5% stockholders such as Dialog, Emily and Malcolm Fairbairn, Hood River Capital Management, DvineWave, and BlackRock Inc. beneficially owned approximately 17.6%, 7.0%, 6.7%, 6.7%, and 5.4%, respectively, of our common stock as of February 15, 2018. As a result, these stockholders will be able to exercise a significant level of control over all matters requiring stockholder approval, including the election of directors, amendment of our certificate of incorporation and approval of significant corporate transactions. This control could have the effect of delaying or preventing a change of control of our company or changes in management and will make the approval of certain transactions difficult or impossible without the support of these stockholders.

***We expect to continue to incur significant costs as a result of being a public reporting company and our management will be required to devote substantial time to meet our compliance obligations.***

As a public reporting company, we incur significant legal, accounting and other expenses. We are subject to reporting requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and rules subsequently implemented by the Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”) that require us to establish and maintain effective disclosure controls and financial controls, as well as some specific corporate governance practices. Our management and other personnel are expected to devote a substantial amount of time to compliance initiatives associated with our public reporting company status.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

***We may be subject to securities litigation, which is expensive and could divert management attention.***

Our stock price has fluctuated in the past, most recently following our announcement of Federal Communications Commission approval of our mid-field transmitter technology, and it may be volatile in the future. In the past, companies that have experienced volatility in the market price of their securities have been subject to securities class action litigation, and we may be the target of litigation of this sort in the future. Securities litigation is costly and can divert management attention from other business concerns, which could seriously harm our business and the value of your investment in our company.

***An active trading market for our common stock may not be maintained.***

Our stock is currently traded on The Nasdaq Stock Market, but we can provide no assurance that we will be able to maintain an active trading market on this or any other exchange in the future. If an active market for our common stock is not maintained, it may be difficult for our stockholders to sell or purchase shares. An inactive market may also impair our ability to raise capital to continue to fund operations by selling shares and impair our ability to acquire other companies or technologies using our shares as consideration.

***If securities or industry analysts do not publish research or reports about our business, or publish negative reports about our business, our stock price and trading volume could decline.***

The trading market for our common stock will depend in part on the research and reports that securities or industry analysts publish about us or our business. We do not have any control over these analysts. There can be no assurance that analysts will continue to cover us or provide favorable coverage. If one or more of the analysts who cover us downgrade our stock or change their opinion of our stock, our stock price would likely decline. If one or more of these analysts cease coverage of our company or fail to regularly publish reports on us, we could lose visibility in the financial markets, which could cause our stock price or trading volume to decline.

***Our ability to use net operating loss carry forwards to reduce future tax payments may be limited if our taxable income does not reach sufficient levels.***

As of December 31, 2017, we had a Federal net operating loss (“NOL”) carryforward of \$84,418,000. Under the U.S. Tax Code, NOL can generally be carried forward to offset future taxable income for a period of 20 years. Our ability to use our NOL during this period will be dependent on our ability to generate taxable income, and the NOL could expire before we generate sufficient taxable income. As of December 31, 2017, based on our history of operating losses it is possible that a portion of our NOL is not fully realizable.

***Our charter documents and Delaware law may inhibit a takeover that stockholders consider favorable.***

Provisions of our certificate of incorporation and bylaws, and applicable Delaware law, may delay or discourage transactions involving an actual or potential change in control or change in our management, including transactions in which stockholders might otherwise receive a premium for their shares, or transactions that our stockholders might otherwise deem to be in their best interests. The provisions in our certificate of incorporation and bylaws:

- authorize our board of directors to issue preferred stock without stockholder approval and to designate the rights, preferences and privileges of each class; if issued, such preferred stock would increase the number of outstanding shares of our capital stock and could include terms that may deter an acquisition of us;
- limit who may call stockholder meetings;
- do not permit stockholders to act by written consent;
- do not provide for cumulative voting rights; and

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

## [Index to Financial Statements](#)

- provide that all vacancies may be filled by the affirmative vote of a majority of directors then in office, even if less than a quorum.

In addition, Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law may limit our ability to engage in any business combination with a person who beneficially owns 15% or more of our outstanding voting stock unless certain conditions are satisfied. This restriction lasts for a period of three years following the share acquisition. These provisions may have the effect of entrenching our management team and may deprive you of the opportunity to sell your shares to potential acquirers at a premium over prevailing prices. This potential inability to obtain a control premium could reduce the price of our common stock.

### **Item 1B. Unresolved Staff Comments**

Not applicable.

### **Item 2. Properties**

In 2014, we entered into a lease agreement for our corporate headquarters located at Northpointe Business Center, 3590 North First Street in San Jose, California. The lease will expire in August 2019. This space is used for our headquarters and for research and development efforts. In 2015, we entered into two sub-lease agreements for additional laboratory space in San Jose, CA, both of which expire in June 2019. In May 2017, we entered into a lease agreement for office space in Costa Mesa, CA which is utilized by our engineers residing in Southern California, which will expire in September 2019.

### **Item 3. Legal Proceedings**

We are not currently a party to any pending legal proceedings that we believe will have a material adverse effect on our business or financial conditions. We may, however, be subject to various claims and legal actions arising in the ordinary course of business from time to time.

### **Item 4. Mine Safety Disclosures**

Not applicable.

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**PART II**

**Item 5. Market for Registrant’s Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities**

Our shares of common stock are listed on The Nasdaq Stock Market under the symbol “WATT.” The table below provides, for the fiscal quarters indicated, the reported high and low closing sales prices for our common stock on The Nasdaq Stock Market since January 1, 2016.

	Price Range	
	High	Low
<b>Fiscal Year Ended December 31, 2016</b>		
First Quarter	\$11.02	\$ 3.86
Second Quarter	\$13.65	\$ 9.58
Third Quarter	\$19.61	\$11.74
Fourth Quarter	\$19.26	\$12.92
<b>Fiscal Year Ended December 31, 2017</b>		
First Quarter	\$19.16	\$13.61
Second Quarter	\$16.45	\$12.30
Third Quarter	\$16.51	\$ 8.95
Fourth Quarter	\$31.57	\$ 7.38

As of December 31, 2017, there were 13 holders of record of our common stock, and we believe we have significantly more beneficial holders of our common stock.

We have never paid cash dividends on our securities and we do not anticipate paying any cash dividends on our shares of common stock in the foreseeable future. We intend to retain any future earnings for reinvestment in our business. Any future determination to pay cash dividends will be at the discretion of our board of directors, and will be dependent upon our financial condition, results of operations, capital requirements and such other factors as our board of directors deems relevant.

**Item 6. Selected Financial Data**

The data set forth below should be read in conjunction with Item 7 – “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” and the Company’s financial statements and notes thereto.

	2017	2016	2015
<b>Selected data from the Statements of Operations:</b>			
Revenue	\$ 1,154,009	\$ 1,451,941	\$ 2,500,000
Loss from operations	\$(49,387,828)	\$(45,830,720)	\$(27,577,339)
Net loss	\$(49,376,875)	\$(45,817,394)	\$(27,561,702)
Basic and diluted loss per common share	\$ (2.31)	\$ (2.60)	\$ (2.07)
<b>Selected data from Balance Sheets:</b>			
Total Assets	\$ 15,405,445	\$ 35,258,940	\$ 32,675,528

The Company has had no long-term liabilities, preferred stock or dividends declared.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**Item 7. Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

**Overview**

We have developed a technology called WattUp® that consists of proprietary semiconductor chipsets, software, hardware designs and antennas that enables radio frequency (“RF”) based charging for electronic devices, providing wire-free charging solutions for contact-based charging and at-a-distance charging, ultimately enabling charging with mobility under software control. Pursuant to our Strategic Alliance Agreement with Dialog Semiconductor plc (“Dialog”), Dialog manufactures and distributes integrated circuit (“IC”) products incorporating our RF-based wire-free charging technology. Dialog is our exclusive supplier of these ICs for the general market. We believe our proprietary technology can be utilized in a variety of devices, including wearables, hearing aids, earbuds, Bluetooth headsets, Internet of Things (“IoT”) devices, smartphones, tablets, e-book readers, keyboards, mice, remote controls, rechargeable lights, cylindrical batteries, medical devices and any other device with similar charging requirements that would otherwise need a battery or a connection to a power outlet.

We believe our technology is novel in its approach, in that we are developing a solution that charges electronic devices by surrounding them with a focused, radio frequency energy pocket (“RF energy pocket”). We are engineering solutions that we expect to enable the wire-free transmission of energy for contact-based applications as well as far field applications of up to 15 feet. We are also developing our Far Field transmitter technology to seamlessly mesh (like a network of Wi-Fi routers) to form a wire-free charging network that will allow users to charge their devices as they move from room-to-room or throughout a large space. To date, we have developed multiple transmitter prototypes in various form factors and power capabilities. We have also developed multiple receiver prototypes, including smartphone battery cases, toys, fitness trackers, Bluetooth headsets and tracking devices, as well as stand-alone receivers. We are also in the pre-production stage leading to mass production with early adopters of the WattUp technology to bring the first contact-based transmitters and compatible receivers to market.

In November 2016, we entered into a Strategic Alliance Agreement with Dialog, pursuant to which Dialog will manufacture and distribute IC products incorporating our wire-free charging technology. Dialog is our exclusive supplier of these products for the general market. Our WattUp technology will use Dialog’s SmartBond® Bluetooth low energy solution as the out-of-band communications channel between the wireless transmitter and receiver. In most cases, Dialog’s power management technology will then be used to distribute power from the WattUp receiver integrated circuit to the rest of the device while Dialog’s AC/DC Rapid Charge™ power conversion technology delivers power to the wireless transmitter.

On December 26, 2017, we announced Federal Communications Commission (FCC) certification of our first-generation WattUp Mid Field transmitter, which sends focused, RF-based power to devices at a distance of up to three feet, while also charging multiple devices at once. Our WattUp Mid Field transmitter underwent rigorous, multi-month testing to verify it met consumer safety and regulatory requirements. We believe this achievement represents the first certification of a Part 18 FCC approved power-at-a-distance wireless charging transmitter, and also establishes a precedent that will streamline both our future FCC and international regulatory approvals, as well as the regulatory approvals of our customers for their respective end-products.

We have recruited and hired a seasoned management team with both private and public company experience and relevant industry experience to develop and execute our operating plan. In addition, we have identified and hired key engineering resources in the areas of IC development, antenna development, hardware, software and firmware engineering as well as integration and testing which will allow us to continue to expand our technology and intellectual property as well as meet the support requirements of our licensees.

The market for products using our technology is nascent and unproven, so the Company’s success is sensitive to many factors, including technological feasibility, regulatory approval, customer acceptance, competition and global market fluctuations.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**Critical Accounting Estimates and Policies**

The following discussion and analysis of financial condition and results of operations is based upon our financial statements, which have been prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. Certain accounting policies and estimates are particularly important to the understanding of our financial position and results of operations and require the application of significant judgment by our management or can be materially affected by changes from period to period in economic factors or conditions that are outside of our control. As a result, they are subject to an inherent degree of uncertainty. In applying these policies, our management uses their judgment to determine the appropriate assumptions to be used in the determination of certain estimates. Those estimates are based on our historical operations, our future business plans and projected financial results, the terms of existing contracts, our observance of trends in the industry, information provided by our customers and information available from other outside sources, as appropriate. Please see Note 3 to our financial statements for a more complete description of our significant accounting policies.

*Basis of Presentation.* The accompanying audited financial statements and footnotes for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 have been prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America (“U.S. GAAP”) and applicable rules and regulations of the SEC regarding financial information.

*Revenue Recognition.* We recognize revenue when the following criteria have been met: persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, services have been rendered, collection of the revenue is reasonably assured, and the fees are fixed or determinable.

We record revenue associated with product development projects that we enter into with certain customers. In general, these projects are associated with complex technology development, and as such we do not have certainty about our ability to achieve the program milestones. Achievement of the milestone is dependent on our performance and the milestone typically needs to be accepted by the customer. The payment associated with achieving the milestone is generally commensurate with our effort or the value of the deliverable and is nonrefundable. We record the expenses related to these projects, generally included in research and development expense, in the periods incurred.

We also receive nonrefundable payments, typically at the beginning of a customer relationship, for which there are no milestones. We recognize this revenue ratably over the initial engineering product development period. We record the expenses related to these projects, generally included in research and development expense, in the periods incurred.

During the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, we recorded revenue of \$1,154,009, \$1,451,941 and \$2,500,000, respectively.

*Research and Development.* Research and development expenses are charged to operations as incurred. For internally developed patents, all patent application costs are expensed as incurred as research and development expense. Patent application costs, generally legal costs, are expensed as research and development costs until such time as the future economic benefits of such patents become more certain. The Company incurred research and development costs of \$33,230,668, \$32,832,677 and \$18,825,041 for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

*Income Taxes.* The Company recognizes deferred tax assets and liabilities for the expected future tax consequences of items that have been included or excluded in the financial statements or tax returns. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are determined on the basis of the difference between the tax basis of assets and liabilities and their respective financial reporting amounts (“temporary differences”) at enacted tax rates in effect for the years in which the temporary differences are expected to reverse.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

### [Index to Financial Statements](#)

For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, the Company had \$23,601,688, \$31,848,990 and \$15,464,406, respectively, of research and development expenses capitalized for federal income tax purposes, with amortization commencing upon the Company receiving an economic benefit from the related research. As of December 31, 2017, the Company had approximately \$84,418,000 gross federal net operating loss carryovers (“NOLs”) and a federal tax credit carryover of approximately \$2,686,000. As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, deferred tax assets consisted principally of net operating loss and tax credit carryovers, the research and development costs and stock-based compensation, and such deferred tax assets were fully reserved. Accordingly, the Company’s effective tax rate for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 was 0%.

Internal Revenue Code Section 382 imposes limitations on the use of net operating loss carryovers when the stock ownership of one or more 5% shareholders (shareholders owning 5% or more of the Company’s outstanding capital stock) has increased on a cumulative basis by more than 50 percentage points. Management cannot control the ownership changes occurring as a result of public trading of the Company’s Common Stock. Accordingly, there is a risk of an ownership change beyond the control of the Company that could trigger a limitation of the use of the loss carryover. The Company completed a Section 382 analysis as of December 31, 2017 and determined that none of its NOLs or R&D credits would be limited.

In assessing the realization of deferred tax assets, management considers whether it is more likely than not that some portion or all of the deferred tax assets will be realized. The ultimate realization of deferred tax assets is dependent upon the future generation of taxable income during the periods in which those temporary differences become deductible. Management considers the scheduled reversal of deferred tax liabilities, projected future taxable income, and taxing strategies in making this assessment. Based on this assessment, management has established a full valuation allowance against all of the net deferred tax assets for each period, since it is more likely than not that all of the deferred tax assets will not be realized.

Tax benefits are recognized only for tax positions that are more likely than not to be sustained upon examination by tax authorities. The amount recognized is measured as the largest amount of benefit that is greater than 50 percent likely to be realized upon settlement. A liability for “unrecognized tax benefits” is recorded for any tax benefits claimed in the Company’s tax returns that do not meet these recognition and measurement standards. As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, no liability for unrecognized tax benefits was required to be reported. The guidance also discusses the classification of related interest and penalties on income taxes. The Company’s policy is to record interest and penalties on uncertain tax positions as a component of income tax expense. No interest or penalties were recorded for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015.

*Common Stock Purchase Warrants and Other Derivative Financial Instruments.* The Company classifies as equity any contracts that (i) require physical settlement or net-share settlement or (ii) provides a choice of net-cash settlement or settlement in the Company’s own shares (physical settlement or net-share settlement) providing that such contracts are indexed to the Company’s own stock as defined in ASC 815-40 “Contracts in Entity’s Own Equity” (“ASC 815-40”). The Company classifies as assets or liabilities any contracts that (i) require net-cash settlement (including a requirement to net cash settle the contract if an event occurs and if that event is outside the Company’s control) or (ii) give the counterparty a choice of net-cash settlement or settlement in shares (physical settlement or net-share settlement). The Company assesses classification of common stock purchase warrants and other free standing derivatives at each reporting date to determine whether a change in classification between assets and liabilities or equity is required.

## **Results of Operations**

### **For the Years Ended December 31, 2017 and 2016**

*Revenues.* During the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, we recorded revenue of \$1,154,009 and \$1,451,941, respectively, upon the achievement of milestones under a development and licensing agreement. The

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

### [Index to Financial Statements](#)

decrease in revenue of \$297,932 is due to the rescoping of project milestones, affecting the amount and timing of the achievement of these milestones.

*Operating Expenses.* Operating expenses consist of research and development, sales and marketing, and general and administrative expenses. Operating expenses for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 were \$50,541,837 and \$47,282,661, respectively.

*Research and Development Expenses.* Research and development expenses include costs for developing our technology, such as IC design costs, salaries, software and facility costs. Research and development costs for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 were \$33,230,668 and \$32,832,677, respectively. The \$397,991 increase in research and development expenses is primarily due to a \$5,939,073 increase in compensation, including a \$4,296,494 increase in stock-based compensation and a \$1,642,579 increase in payroll and related compensation expense, from a greater average headcount and the issuance of additional restricted stock unit (RSU) awards, and a \$390,072 increase in depreciation due to a higher asset base in lab equipment and perpetual engineering software licenses, partially offset by a \$3,966,298 decrease in chip development, manufacturing and engineering component costs due to more transmitter and receiver chip development work being done in house, a \$973,467 decrease in term-based engineering software licenses and \$931,834 decrease in consulting costs.

*Sales and Marketing Expenses.* Sales and marketing expenses for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 were \$5,207,746 and \$3,201,549, respectively. The \$2,006,197 increase in sales and marketing expenses is primarily due to an increase of \$1,753,758 in compensation, including a \$969,398 increase in payroll and related expense and a \$784,360 increase in stock-based compensation, due to a higher average headcount and the issuance of additional RSU grants and a \$235,506 increase in tradeshow expenses.

*General and Administrative Expenses.* General and administrative expenses include costs for general and corporate functions, including facility fees, travel, telecommunications, insurance, professional fees, consulting fees and other overhead. General and administrative costs for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 were \$12,103,423 and \$11,248,435, respectively. The \$854,988 increase in general and administrative expense is primarily due to a \$1,180,146 increase in compensation, including a \$1,213,790 increase in stock-based compensation and a \$33,644 decrease in payroll costs, a \$136,122 decrease in general office expenses, and a \$117,692 decrease in consulting and third party service costs.

*Loss from Operations.* Loss from operations for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 was \$49,387,828 and \$45,830,720, respectively.

*Interest Income.* Interest income for the year ended December 31, 2017 was \$11,679, compared to \$13,326 for the year ended December 31, 2016.

*Net Loss.* As a result of the above, net loss for the year ended December 31, 2017 was \$49,376,875, compared to \$45,817,394 for the year ended December 31, 2016.

### **For the Years Ended December 31, 2016 and 2015**

*Revenues.* During the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015, we recorded revenue of \$1,451,941 and \$2,500,000, respectively, upon the achievement of milestones under a development and licensing agreement. The decrease in revenue of \$1,048,059 is due to the rescoping of project milestones, affecting the amount and timing of the achievement of these milestones.

*Operating Expenses.* During 2016 and 2015, operating expenses are made up of research and development, sales and marketing, and general and administrative expenses. Operating expenses for the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015 were \$47,282,661 and \$30,077,339, respectively.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

### [Index to Financial Statements](#)

*Research and Development Expenses.* Research and development expenses include costs for developing our technology, such as IC design costs, salaries, software and facility costs. Research and development costs for the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015 were \$32,832,677 and \$18,825,041, respectively. The increase in research and development costs of \$14,007,636 is primarily due to a \$4,640,880 increase in compensation (including an increase in stock-based compensation of \$1,409,597) from a larger headcount within the department, a \$4,483,417 increase in chip design, development and manufacturing costs for our receiver and transmitter chips, a \$1,564,187 increase in patent legal costs related to the management of our patent portfolio, an \$883,272 increase in software expense due to incurring a full year of the hosted design solution package and an increase in various engineering software licenses needed to support a larger staff and an \$819,503 increase in consulting fees to assist in our quality assurance, design and regulatory efforts.

*Sales and Marketing Expenses.* Sales and marketing expenses for the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015 were \$3,201,549 and \$3,221,303, respectively. The decrease in sales and marketing costs of \$19,754 is primarily due to minor decreases in consulting and travel, partially offset by minor increases in compensation, recruiting and tradeshow expenses.

*General and Administrative Expenses.* General and administrative expenses include costs for general and corporate functions, including facility fees, travel, telecommunications, insurance, professional fees, consulting fees and other overhead. General and administrative costs for the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015 were \$11,248,435 and \$8,030,995, respectively. The increase in general and administrative expense of \$3,217,440 is primarily due to a \$2,966,474 increase in compensation, including stock-based compensation increase of \$2,547,733, from increased headcount within the department and newly executed executive stock award agreements, a \$305,390 increase in telecommunications and miscellaneous office expenses to support a larger company headcount, a \$232,667 increase in legal, accounting and insurance fees, partially offset by a \$163,341 decrease in consulting and outside service fees.

*Loss from Operations.* Loss from operations for the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015 was \$45,830,720 and \$27,577,339, respectively.

*Interest Income.* Interest income for the year ended December 31, 2016 was \$13,326 as compared to \$15,637 for the year ended December 31, 2015.

*Net Loss.* As a result of the above, net loss for the year ended December 31, 2016 was \$45,817,394 as compared to \$27,561,702 for the year ended December 31, 2015.

### ***Liquidity and Capital Resources***

During years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, we recorded revenue of \$1,154,009 and \$1,451,941, respectively. We incurred a net loss of \$49,376,875 and \$45,817,394 for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. Net cash used in operating activities was \$34,430,298 and \$33,062,247 for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. Since inception, we have met our liquidity requirements principally through the private placement of convertible notes, the sale of our common stock in a registered initial public offering, the sale of our common stock to a strategic investor, the issuance of our common stock to the Company's landlord to reduce its monthly base rent obligation and pay for certain tenant improvements, the sale of common stock in two follow-on public offerings, sales of stock to investors in private placements, and revenue received under product development projects entered into with customers.

As of December 31, 2017, we had cash and cash equivalents of \$12,795,254. Also, as noted in the subsequent event section of our 2017 audited financial statements, during January 2018, we raised \$38,999,989 (net of underwriters' discount of \$1,000,000) from the sale of stock to the public in an "at-the-market" equity offering of our common stock.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

## [Index to Financial Statements](#)

We believe our current cash on hand, together with anticipated payments under product development projects entered into with customers, will be sufficient to fund our operations into the second quarter of 2019. However, depending on how soon we are able to achieve meaningful commercial revenues, we may require additional financing to fully implement our business plan, the ultimate goal of which is to license our technology to device manufacturers, wireless service providers and other commercial partners to make wire-free charging an affordable, ubiquitous and convenient service for end users. Potential financing sources could include follow-on equity offerings, debt financing, co-development agreements or other alternatives. Depending upon market conditions, we may choose to pursue additional financing to, among other reasons, accelerate our product development efforts, regulatory activities and business development and support functions with a view to capitalizing on the market opportunity we see for our wire-free charging technology. On April 24, 2015, we filed a “shelf” registration statement on Form S-3, which became effective on April 30, 2015. The “shelf” registration statement allows the Company from time to time to sell any combination of debt or equity securities described in the registration statement up to aggregate proceeds of \$75,000,000, of which approximately \$60,700,000 has already been sold.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, cash flows used in operating activities were \$34,430,298, consisting of a net loss of \$49,376,875, less non-cash expenses aggregating \$17,194,309 (representing principally stock-based compensation of \$15,802,819 and depreciation expense of \$1,309,980), a \$2,683,073 decrease in accounts payable, partially offset by a \$348,275 decrease in prepaid expenses and other current assets and a \$149,500 decrease in accounts receivable. During the year ended December 31, 2016, cash flows used in operating activities were \$33,062,247, consisting of a net loss of \$45,817,394, less non-cash expenses aggregating \$10,546,795 (representing principally stock-based compensation of \$9,508,175 and depreciation expense of \$957,836), a \$2,382,790 increase in accounts payable, a \$492,616 increase in accrued expenses, partially offset by a \$652,336 increase in prepaid expenses and other current assets.

During the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, cash flows used in investing activities were \$814,648 and \$1,137,446, respectively. The cash used for year ended December 31, 2017 consisted of purchases of laboratory equipment and software to help with chip development and testing. The cash used for the year ended December 31, 2016 consisted of purchases of laboratory and software to accommodate a larger engineering staff and to help with chip development and testing.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, cash flows provided by financing activities were \$16,781,563, which consisted of net proceeds of \$14,932,547 from the issuance of shares to private investors, proceeds from the exercise of stock options of \$979,950 and proceeds from contributions to the employee stock purchase program (“ESPP”) of \$869,066. During the year ended December 31, 2016, cash flows provided by financing activities were \$35,585,766, which primarily consisted of net proceeds of \$34,788,311 from the issuance of shares to private investors, proceeds from contributions to the employee stock purchase program (“ESPP”) of \$727,784, proceeds from the exercise of stock options of \$382,351, offset by a total of \$312,680 in shares repurchased for tax withholdings on vesting of RSUs and PSUs.

Research and development of new technologies is, by its nature, unpredictable. Although we intend to undertake development efforts with commercially reasonable diligence, there can be no assurance that our available resources including the net proceeds from our public offerings will be sufficient to enable us to develop our technology to the extent needed to create future revenues to sustain our operations.

We cannot assure that our technology will be adopted, that we will ever earn revenues sufficient to support our operations, or that we will ever be profitable. Furthermore, since we have no committed source of financing, there can be no assurance that we will be able to raise capital as and when we need it to continue our operations.

### **Contractual Obligations**

In the ordinary course of business, we routinely enter into purchase commitments for various aspects of our operations, such as purchases of engineering supplies, lab equipment, chip design engineering, engineering

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

consulting services and software licenses. We do not believe these commitments will have a material effect on our financial condition, results of operations or cash flows.

The following table summarizes our contractual obligations at December 31, 2017 and the effect such obligations are expected to have on our liquidity and cash flows in future periods:

	Total	Less than 1 Year	1 to 3 Years	More than 3 Years
Operating leases	\$1,097,787	\$640,202	\$ 457,585	\$ —
Engineering software commitment	198,105	198,105	—	—
Total	\$1,295,892	\$838,307	\$ 457,585	\$ —

**Off-Balance Sheet Transactions**

We do not have any off-balance sheet transactions.

**Item 7A. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk.**

In the ordinary course of business, we may be exposed to certain market risks, such as interest rates. The annual impact of our results of operations of a 100 basis point interest rate change on December 31, 2017 would be minimal. After an assessment of these risks to our operations, we believe that the primary market risk exposures (within the meaning of Regulation S-K Item 305) are not material and are not expected to have any material adverse impact on our financial position, results of operations or cash flows for the next fiscal year.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**Item 8. Financial Statements and Supplementary Data.**

Energous Corporation

INDEX TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

	<u>Page(s)</u>
<a href="#">Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm</a>	34
<a href="#">Balance Sheets as of December 31, 2017 and 2016</a>	35
<a href="#">Statements of Operations for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015</a>	36
<a href="#">Statement of Changes in Stockholders' Equity for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015</a>	37
<a href="#">Statements of Cash Flows for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015</a>	38
<a href="#">Notes to Financial Statements</a>	39

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM**

To the Shareholders and Board of Directors  
of Energos Corporation

**Opinion on the Financial Statements**

We have audited the accompanying balance sheets of Energos Corporation (the “Company”) as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the related statements of operations, changes in stockholders’ equity and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2017, and the related notes (collectively referred to as the “financial statements”). In our opinion, the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2017, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

**Basis for Opinion**

These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company’s management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company’s financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (“PCAOB”) and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audits to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. As part of our audits we are required to obtain an understanding of internal control over financial reporting but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company’s internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion.

Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

We have served as the Company’s auditor since 2013.

/s/ Marcum LLP

Marcum LLP  
Melville, NY  
March 16, 2018

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**Energous Corporation**  
**BALANCE SHEETS**

	As of	
	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
<b>ASSETS</b>		
Current assets:		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 12,795,254	\$ 31,258,637
Accounts receivable	—	149,500
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	1,026,310	1,374,585
Prepaid rent, current	80,784	80,784
Total current assets	<u>13,902,348</u>	<u>32,863,506</u>
Property and equipment, net	1,413,917	2,209,475
Prepaid rent, non-current	56,668	137,452
Other assets	32,512	48,507
Total assets	<u>\$ 15,405,445</u>	<u>\$ 35,258,940</u>
<b>LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>		
Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable	\$ 2,024,690	\$ 4,707,763
Accrued expenses	1,622,025	1,867,995
Deferred revenue	—	131,959
Total current liabilities	<u>3,646,715</u>	<u>6,707,717</u>
Commitments and contingencies		
Stockholders' equity:		
Preferred Stock, \$0.00001 par value, 10,000,000 shares authorized at December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016; no shares issued or outstanding	—	—
Common Stock, \$0.00001 par value, 50,000,000 shares authorized at December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016; 22,584,588 and 20,367,929 shares issued and outstanding at December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, respectively.	225	202
Additional paid-in capital	185,659,954	153,075,595
Accumulated deficit	<u>(173,901,449)</u>	<u>(124,524,574)</u>
Total stockholders' equity	<u>11,758,730</u>	<u>28,551,223</u>
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	<u>\$ 15,405,445</u>	<u>\$ 35,258,940</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**Energous Corporation**  
**STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS**

	For the Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Revenue	\$ 1,154,009	\$ 1,451,941	\$ 2,500,000
Operating expenses:			
Research and development	33,230,668	32,832,677	18,825,041
Sales and marketing	5,207,746	3,201,549	3,221,303
General and administrative	12,103,423	11,248,435	8,030,995
Total operating expenses	<u>50,541,837</u>	<u>47,282,661</u>	<u>30,077,339</u>
Loss from operations	<u>(49,387,828)</u>	<u>(45,830,720)</u>	<u>(27,577,339)</u>
Other income (expense):			
Interest income, net	11,679	13,326	15,637
Loss on sale of property and equipment	(726)	—	—
Total	<u>10,953</u>	<u>13,326</u>	<u>15,637</u>
Net loss	<u>\$(49,376,875)</u>	<u>\$(45,817,394)</u>	<u>\$(27,561,702)</u>
Basic and diluted loss per common share	<u>\$ (2.31)</u>	<u>\$ (2.60)</u>	<u>\$ (2.07)</u>
Weighted average shares outstanding, basic and diluted	<u>21,343,001</u>	<u>17,649,013</u>	<u>13,303,715</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**Energous Corporation**  
**STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY**

	Common Stock		Additional Paid-in Capital	Accumulated Deficit	Total Stockholders' Equity
	Shares	Amount			
Balance, January 1, 2015	12,781,502	\$ 127	\$ 82,465,914	\$ (51,145,478)	\$ 31,320,563
Issuance of shares for services	15,000	—	147,900	—	147,900
Stock-based compensation - stock options	—	—	1,037,399	—	1,037,399
Stock-based compensation - IR warrants	—	—	85,831	—	85,831
Stock-based compensation - restricted stock units ("RSUs")	—	—	4,225,728	—	4,225,728
Stock-based compensation - employee stock purchase plan ("ESPP")	—	—	113,217	—	113,217
Stock-based compensation - performance share units ("PSUs")	—	—	489,239	—	489,239
Issuance of shares for RSUs	304,340	3	(3)	—	—
Issuance of shares for PSUs	1,072	—	—	—	—
Exercise of stock options	21,786	—	65,647	—	65,647
Disgorgement on account of short swing profit	—	—	12,611	—	12,611
Cashless exercise of warrants	128,480	1	(1)	—	—
Shares purchased from contributions to the ESPP	46,023	—	289,787	—	289,787
Secondary offering on November 20, 2015, net of underwriter's discount and offering costs of \$1,651,578	3,000,005	30	19,048,426	—	19,048,456
Net loss	—	—	—	(27,561,702)	(27,561,702)
Balance, December 31, 2015	16,298,208	\$ 161	\$107,981,695	\$ (78,707,180)	\$ 29,274,676
Stock-based compensation - stock options	—	—	1,045,081	—	1,045,081
Stock-based compensation - restricted stock units ("RSUs")	—	—	5,735,032	—	5,735,032
Stock based compensation - deferred stock units ("DSUs")	—	—	123,644	—	123,644
Stock-based compensation - employee stock purchase plan ("ESPP")	—	—	318,735	—	318,735
Stock-based compensation - performance share units ("PSUs")	—	—	2,285,683	—	2,285,683
Issuance of shares for RSUs	519,200	5	(5)	—	—
Shares repurchased for tax withholdings on vesting of RSUs	(20,669)	—	(266,217)	—	(266,217)
Issuance of shares for PSUs	209,673	2	(2)	—	—
Shares repurchased for tax withholdings on vesting of PSUs	(3,607)	—	(46,463)	—	(46,463)
Exercise of stock options	130,354	1	382,350	—	382,351
Cashless exercise of warrants	475,683	5	(5)	—	—
Shares purchased from contributions to the ESPP	85,356	1	727,783	—	727,784
Issuance of shares and warrants in private placements, net of issuance costs of \$211,676	2,673,731	27	34,788,284	—	34,788,311
Net loss	—	—	—	(45,817,394)	(45,817,394)
Balance, December 31, 2016	20,367,929	\$ 202	\$153,075,595	\$ (124,524,574)	\$ 28,551,223
Stock-based compensation - stock options	—	—	764,723	—	764,723
Stock-based compensation - restricted stock units ("RSUs")	—	—	13,043,171	—	13,043,171
Stock based compensation - deferred stock units ("DSUs")	—	—	1,362	—	1,362
Stock-based compensation - employee stock purchase plan ("ESPP")	—	—	331,913	—	331,913
Stock-based compensation - performance share units ("PSUs")	—	—	1,661,650	—	1,661,650
Issuance of shares for RSUs	781,051	8	(8)	—	—
Issuance of shares for DSUs	14,953	—	—	—	—
Issuance of shares for PSUs	90,000	1	(1)	—	—
Exercise of stock options	272,205	3	979,947	—	979,950
Cashless exercise of warrants	19,611	—	—	—	—
Shares purchased from contributions to the ESPP	62,700	1	869,065	—	869,066
Issuance of shares and warrants in private placements, net of issuance costs of \$67,388	976,139	10	14,932,537	—	14,932,547
Net loss	—	—	—	(49,376,875)	(49,376,875)
Balance, December 31, 2017	22,584,588	\$ 225	\$185,659,954	\$ (173,901,449)	\$ 11,758,730

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**Energous Corporation**  
**STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS**

	For the Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Cash flows from operating activities:			
Net loss	\$(49,376,875)	\$(45,817,394)	\$(27,561,702)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to:			
Net cash used in operating activities:			
Depreciation and amortization	1,309,980	957,836	817,729
Stock based compensation	15,802,819	9,508,175	5,951,414
Loss on sale of property and equipment	726	—	—
Amortization of prepaid rent from stock issuance to landlord	80,784	80,784	80,784
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:			
Accounts receivable	149,500	(149,500)	—
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	348,275	(652,336)	(157,769)
Other assets	15,995	2,823	(28,682)
Accounts payable	(2,683,073)	2,382,790	608,962
Accrued expenses	53,530	492,616	283,530
Deferred revenue	(131,959)	131,959	—
Net cash used in operating activities	<u>(34,430,298)</u>	<u>(33,062,247)</u>	<u>(20,005,734)</u>
Cash flows from investing activities:			
Purchases of property and equipment	(817,448)	(1,137,446)	(1,032,795)
Proceeds from the sale of property and equipment	2,800	—	—
Net cash used in investing activities	<u>(814,648)</u>	<u>(1,137,446)</u>	<u>(1,032,795)</u>
Cash flows from financing activities:			
Proceeds from shares issued under shelf registration, net of underwriter's discount and offering expenses	—	—	19,048,456
Net proceeds from issuance of shares to private investors	14,932,547	34,788,311	—
Proceeds from the exercise of stock options	979,950	382,351	65,647
Proceeds from contributions to employee stock purchase plan	869,066	727,784	289,787
Shares repurchased for tax withholdings on vesting of RSUs	—	(266,217)	—
Shares repurchased for tax withholdings on vesting of PSUs	—	(46,463)	—
Proceeds from the disgorgement of short-swing profit	—	—	12,611
Net cash provided by financing activities	<u>16,781,563</u>	<u>35,585,766</u>	<u>19,416,501</u>
Net (decrease) increase in cash and cash equivalents	(18,463,383)	1,386,073	(1,622,028)
Cash and cash equivalents - beginning	<u>31,258,637</u>	<u>29,872,564</u>	<u>31,494,592</u>
Cash and cash equivalents - ending	<u>\$ 12,795,254</u>	<u>\$ 31,258,637</u>	<u>\$ 29,872,564</u>
Supplemental disclosure of non-cash financing activities:			
Common stock issued for services	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 147,900
Common stock issued for RSUs	\$ 8	\$ 6	\$ 3
Common stock issued for PSUs	\$ 1	\$ 2	\$ —
Cashless exercise of warrants	\$ —	\$ 5	\$ 1
Increase in accrued expenses for the purchase of property and equipment	\$ —	\$ 299,500	\$ —

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 1 – Business Organization, Nature of Operations**

Energous Corporation (the “Company”) was incorporated in Delaware on October 30, 2012. The Company has developed a technology called WattUp® that consists of proprietary semiconductor chipsets, software, hardware designs and antennas that enables RF-based wire-free charging for electronic devices, providing power at a distance and ultimately enabling charging with mobility under software control. Pursuant to a Strategic Alliance Agreement with Dialog, a related party (see Note 10—Related Party Transactions), Dialog manufactures and distributes IC products incorporating the Company’s RF-based wire-free charging technology. Dialog will be the exclusive supplier of these ICs for the general market. The Company believes our proprietary technology can be utilized in a variety of devices, including wearables, Internet of Things (“IoT”) devices, smartphones, tablets, e-book readers, keyboards, mice, remote controls, rechargeable lights, cylindrical batteries and any other device with similar charging requirements that would otherwise need a battery or a connection to a power outlet.

The Company is using its WattUp technology to develop solutions that charge electronic devices by surrounding them with a contained 3D RF energy pocket. The Company is engineering solutions that are expected to enable the wire-free transmission of energy from multiple WattUp transmitters to multiple WattUp receiving devices within a range of up to 15 feet in radius or in a circular charging envelope of up to 30 feet. The Company is also developing a transmitter technology to seamlessly mesh, like a network of Wi-Fi routers, to form a wire-free charging network that will allow users to charge their devices as they move from room-to-room or throughout a large space. To date, the Company has developed multiple transmitter prototypes in various form factors and power capabilities. The Company has also developed multiple receiver prototypes supporting smartphone battery cases, toys, fitness trackers, Bluetooth headsets and tracking devices, as well as stand-alone receivers.

The market for products using the Company’s technology is nascent and unproven, so the Company’s success is sensitive to many factors, including technological feasibility, regulatory approval, customer acceptance, competition and global market fluctuations.

**Note 2 – Liquidity and Management Plans**

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company has recorded revenue of \$1,154,009. The Company incurred a net loss of \$49,376,875, \$45,817,394 and \$27,561,702 for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively. Net cash used in operating activities was \$34,430,298, \$33,062,247 and \$20,005,734 for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively. The Company is currently meeting its liquidity requirements principally through sales of shares to three different private investors during August 2016, November 2016, December 2016 and July 2017, raising net proceeds of \$49,720,858, and payments received under product development projects.

As of December 31, 2017, the Company had cash on hand of \$12,795,254. The Company expects that cash on hand as of December 31, 2017, together with anticipated payments to be received under current product development projects and anticipated royalties from chip revenue, together with potential new financing activities including potential sales of stock, will be sufficient to fund the Company’s operations into the first quarter of 2019. As noted in Note 12—Subsequent Events, the Company raised \$38,999,989 (net of underwriters’ discount of \$1,000,000) from the sales of stock in January 2018.

Research and development of new technologies is, by its nature, unpredictable. Although the Company intends to undertake development efforts with commercially reasonable diligence, there can be no assurance that its available resources will be sufficient to enable it to develop and obtain regulatory approval of its technology

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 2 – Liquidity and Management Plans, continued**

to the extent needed to create future revenues sufficient to sustain its operations. The Company expects to pursue additional financing, which could include follow-on equity offerings, debt financing, co-development agreements or other alternatives, depending upon market conditions. Should the Company choose to pursue additional financing, there is no assurance that it would be able to do so on terms that are favorable to the Company or its stockholders.

**Note 3 – Summary of Significant Accounting Policies**

***Basis of Presentation***

The accompanying financial statements are presented in U.S. dollars and have been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (“U.S. GAAP”), and pursuant to the accounting and disclosure rules and regulations of the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”).

***Use of Estimates***

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and the disclosure of contingent liabilities at the date of the financial statements as well as the reported expenses during the reporting periods.

The Company’s significant estimates and assumptions include the valuation of stock-based compensation instruments, recognition of revenue, the useful lives of long-lived assets, and income tax expense. Some of these judgments can be subjective and complex, and, consequently, actual results may differ from these estimates. Although the Company believes that its estimates and assumptions are reasonable, they are based upon information available at the time the estimates and assumptions were made. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

***Cash and Cash Equivalents***

The Company considers all short-term, highly liquid investments with an original maturity at the date of purchase of three months or less to be cash equivalents. The Company maintains cash balances that may be uninsured or in deposit accounts that exceed Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation limits. The Company maintains its cash deposits with major financial institutions.

***Revenue Recognition***

The Company recognizes revenue when all of the following criteria have been met: persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, services have been rendered, collection of the revenue is reasonably assured, and the fees are fixed or determinable.

The Company records revenue associated with product development projects that it enters into with certain customers. In general, these projects are associated with complex technology development, and as such the Company does not have certainty about its ability to achieve the program milestones. Achievement of the milestone is dependent on our performance and the milestone typically needs to be accepted by the customer. The payment associated with achieving the milestone is generally commensurate with the Company’s effort or the value of the deliverable and is nonrefundable. The Company records the expenses related to these projects, generally included in research and development expense, in the periods incurred.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 3 – Summary of Significant Accounting Policies, continued**

***Revenue Recognition, continued***

The Company also receives nonrefundable payments, typically at the beginning of a customer relationship, for which there are no milestones. The Company recognizes this revenue ratably over the initial engineering product development period. The Company records the expenses related to these projects, generally included in research and development expense, in the periods incurred.

***Research and Development***

Research and development expenses are charged to operations as incurred. For internally developed patents, all patent application costs are expensed as incurred as research and development expense. Patent application costs, generally legal costs, are expensed as research and development costs until such time as the future economic benefits of such patents become more certain. The Company incurred research and development costs of \$33,230,668, \$32,832,677 and \$18,825,041 for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

***Stock-Based Compensation***

The Company accounts for equity instruments issued to employees in accordance with accounting guidance that requires awards to be recorded at their fair value on the date of grant and are amortized over the vesting period of the award. The Company recognizes compensation costs on a straight line basis over the requisite service period of the award, which is typically the vesting term of the equity instrument issued.

On April 10, 2015, the Company's board of directors approved the Energoous Corporation Employee Stock Purchase Plan (the "ESPP"), under which 600,000 shares of common stock were reserved for purchase by the Company's employees, subject to approval by the stockholders. On May 21, 2015, the Company's stockholders approved the ESPP. Under the plan, employees may purchase a limited number of shares of the Company's common stock at a 15% discount from the lower of the closing market prices measured on the first and last days of each half-year period. The Company recognizes compensation expense for the fair value of the purchase options, as measured on the grant date.

***Income Taxes***

Tax benefits are recognized only for tax positions that are more likely than not to be sustained upon examination by tax authorities. The amount recognized is measured as the largest amount of benefit that is greater than 50 percent likely to be realized upon settlement. A liability for "unrecognized tax benefits" is recorded for any tax benefits claimed in the Company's tax returns that do not meet these recognition and measurement standards. As of December 31, 2017, no liability for unrecognized tax benefits was required to be reported. The guidance also discusses the classification of related interest and penalties on income taxes. The Company's policy is to record interest and penalties on uncertain tax positions as a component of income tax expense. No interest or penalties were recorded during the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015. The Company files income tax returns with the United States and California governments.

***Net Loss Per Common Share***

Basic net loss per share is computed by dividing net loss available to common stockholders by the weighted average number of shares of common stock outstanding during the period. Diluted earnings per share is computed using the weighted average number of common shares and, if dilutive, potential common shares

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 3 – Summary of Significant Accounting Policies, continued**

*Net Loss Per Common Share, continued*

outstanding during the period. Potential common shares consist of the incremental common shares issuable upon the exercise of stock options and warrants (using the treasury stock method), the vesting of restricted stock units (“RSUs”) and performance stock units (“PSUs”) and the enrollment of employees in the ESPP. The computation of diluted loss per share excludes potentially dilutive securities of 7,324,400, 6,975,651 and 4,994,425 for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively, because their inclusion would be antidilutive.

Potentially dilutive securities outlined in the table below have been excluded from the computation of diluted net loss per share because the effect of their inclusion would have been anti-dilutive.

	For the Years Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Consulting Warrant to purchase common stock	—	—	146,252
Financing Warrant to purchase common stock	13,889	13,889	152,778
IPO Warrants to purchase common stock	11,600	11,600	460,000
IR Consulting Warrant	—	23,250	36,000
IR Incentive Warrant	—	15,000	15,000
Warrants issued to private investors	3,035,688	2,381,675	—
Options to purchase common stock	1,037,239	1,309,444	1,487,785
RSUs	2,274,327	2,052,223	1,560,996
PSUs	951,657	1,153,617	1,135,614
DSUs	—	14,953	—
Total potentially dilutive securities	<u>7,324,400</u>	<u>6,975,651</u>	<u>4,994,425</u>

**Recent Accounting Pronouncements**

In May 2014, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (“FASB”) issued Accounting Standards Update No. 2014-09, “Revenue from Contracts with Customers” (Topic 606) (“ASU 2014-09”), which supersedes the revenue recognition requirements in ASU Topic 605, “Revenue Recognition,” and most industry-specific guidance. ASU 2014-09 is based on the principle that revenue is recognized to depict the transfer of goods or services to customers in an amount that reflects the consideration to which the entity expects to be entitled in exchange for those goods or services. ASU 2014-09 also requires additional disclosure about the nature, amount, timing and uncertainty of revenue and cash flows arising from customer contracts, including significant judgments and changes in judgments, and assets recognized from costs incurred to obtain or fulfill a contract. Originally, ASU 2014-09 would be effective for the Company starting January 1, 2017 using either of two methods: (i) retrospective to each prior reporting period presented with the option to elect certain practical expedients as defined within ASU 2014-09; or (ii) retrospective with the cumulative effect of initially applying ASU 2014-09 recognized at the date of initial application and providing certain additional disclosures as defined per ASU 2014-09. In July 2015, FASB voted to amend ASU 2014-09 by approving a one-year deferral of the effective date as well as providing the option to early adopt the standard on the original effective date. There have also been multiple clarifying ASU’s issued subsequent to ASU 2014-09. This standard has an effective date of January 1, 2018, and the Company anticipates using the modified retrospective implementation method, whereby a cumulative effect adjustment is recorded to retained earnings as of the date of initial application, if needed. In preparing for adoption, the Company has evaluated the terms, conditions and performance obligations under our existing contracts with customers. The Company does not expect to have a cumulative adjustment to retained earnings, and does not anticipate that the new standard will have a material impact on its financial condition, results of operations or cash flows.

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 3 – Summary of Significant Accounting Policies, continued**

*Recent Accounting Pronouncements, continued*

In August 2014, FASB issued ASU No. 2014-15, Presentation of Financial Statements—Going Concern (Subtopic 205-40): Disclosure of Uncertainties about an Entity’s Ability to Continue as a Going Concern. This standard is intended to define management’s responsibility to evaluate whether there is substantial doubt about an organization’s ability to continue as a going concern and to provide related footnote disclosures. Under US GAAP, financial statements are prepared under the presumption that the reporting organization will continue to operate as a going concern, except in limited circumstances. Financial reporting under this presumption is commonly referred to as the going concern basis of accounting. The going concern basis of accounting is critical to financial reporting because it establishes the fundamental basis for measuring and classifying assets and liabilities. Currently, US GAAP lacks guidance about management’s responsibility to evaluate whether there is substantial doubt about the organization’s ability to continue as a going concern or to provide related footnote disclosures. This ASU provides guidance to an organization’s management, with principles and definitions that are intended to reduce diversity in the timing and content of disclosures that are commonly provided by organizations today in the financial statement footnotes. The amendments are effective for annual periods ending after December 15, 2016, and interim periods within annual periods beginning after December 15, 2016. The Company adopted ASU 2014-15 and management has made the appropriate evaluations and disclosures in Note 2 - Liquidity and Management Plans.

In April 2015, the FASB issued ASU No. 2015-03, “Simplifying the Presentation of Debt Issuance Costs.” This standard amends existing guidance to require the presentation of debt issuance costs in the balance sheet as a deduction from the carrying amount of the related debt liability instead of a deferred charge. It is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2015. The Company has adopted ASU 2015-03, and the adoption of this standard did not have a material impact on the Company’s financial position and results of operations.

In August 2015, the FASB issued ASU No. 2015-15, “Presentation and Subsequent Measurement of Debt Issuance Costs Associated with Line-of-Credit Arrangements”—Amendments to SEC Paragraphs Pursuant to Staff Announcement at June 18, 2015, which clarified the SEC staff’s position on presenting and measuring debt issuance costs incurred in connection with line-of-credit arrangements. ASU 2015-15 should be adopted concurrently with the adoption of ASU 2015-03. The Company has adopted ASU 2015-15, and the adoption of this standard did not have a material impact on the Company’s financial position and results of operations.

In November 2015, the FASB issued ASU No. 2015-17, “Balance Sheet Classification of Deferred Taxes” (“ASU 2015-17”). The standard requires that deferred tax assets and liabilities be classified as noncurrent in a classified statement of financial position. ASU 2015-17 is effective for fiscal years and interim periods within those years, beginning after December 15, 2016. Early adoption is permitted. ASU 2015-17 may be applied either prospectively, for all deferred tax assets and liabilities, or retrospectively. The Company has early adopted ASU 2015-17 effective December 31, 2015, retrospectively. The adoption of this standard had no impact on the results of operations.

In January 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-01, “Financial Instruments—Overall (Subtopic 825-10): Recognition and Measurement of Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities” (“ASU 2016-01”). The standard addresses certain aspects of recognition, measurement, presentation, and disclosure of financial instruments. ASU 2016-01 is effective for fiscal years, and interim periods within those years, beginning after December 15, 2017. The Company is currently evaluating the impact the adoption of this new standard will have on its financial statements.

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 3 – Summary of Significant Accounting Policies, continued**

***Recent Accounting Pronouncements, continued***

In January 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-02, “Leases (Topic 842)” (“ASU 2016-02”). This standard requires that a lessee recognize the assets and liabilities that arise from operating leases. A lessee should recognize in the statement of financial position a liability to make lease payments (the lease liability) and a right-of-use asset representing its right to use the underlying asset for the lease term. For leases with a term of 12 months or less, a lessee is permitted to make an accounting policy election by class of underlying asset not to recognize lease assets and lease liabilities. In transition, lessees and lessors are required to recognize and measure leases at the beginning of the earliest period presented using a modified retrospective approach. ASU 2016-02 is effective for fiscal years, and interim periods within those years, beginning after December 15, 2018. The Company is currently evaluating the impact the adoption of this new standard will have on its financial statements.

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-09, “Compensation - Stock Compensation (Topic 718) - Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting.” ASU No. 2016-09 includes provisions to simplify certain aspects related to the accounting for share-based awards and the related financial statement presentation. This ASU includes a requirement that the tax effect related to the settlement of share-based awards be recorded in income tax benefit or expense in the statements of earnings. This change is required to be adopted prospectively in the period of adoption. In addition, the ASU modifies the classification of certain share-based payment activities within the statements of cash flows and these changes are required to be applied retrospectively to all periods presented, or in certain cases prospectively, beginning in the period of adoption. ASU No. 2016-09 is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2016, including interim periods within that reporting period. The Company adopted ASU 2016-09 effective January 1, 2017. The adoption of this standard did not have a material impact on the results of operations.

In June 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-13, “Financial Instruments – Credit Losses (Topic 326) - Measurement of Credit Losses on Financial Instruments.” ASU No. 2016-13 provides financial statement reader more decision-useful information about the expected credit losses on financial instruments and other commitments to extend credit held by a reporting entity at each reporting date. It is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2019. The Company will evaluate the effects, if any, that adoption of this guidance will have on its financial statements.

In August 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-15, “Statement of Cash Flows (Topic 230) - Classification of Certain Cash Receipts and Cash Payments.” ASU No. 2016-15 addresses eight specific cash flow issues with the objective of reducing the existing diversity in practice. It is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2017. The Company is currently evaluating the impact this standard will have on its financial statements.

In November 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-18, “Statement of Cash Flows (Topic 230)—Restricted Cash.” ASU No. 2016-18 requires an entity to include amounts described as restricted cash and restricted cash equivalents with cash and cash equivalents when reconciling the beginning-of-period and end-of-period total amounts shown on the statement of cash flows. It is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2018. The adoption of this standard is not expected to have a material impact on the Company’s financial position and results of operations.

In December 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-20, “Technical Corrections and Improvements to Topic 606, Revenue from Contracts with Customers.” ASU No. 2016-20 amends certain aspects of ASU No. 2014-09

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 3 – Summary of Significant Accounting Policies, continued**

*Recent Accounting Pronouncements, continued*

and clarifies, rather than changes, the core revenue recognition principles in ASU No. 2014-09. It is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2018. The adoption of this standard is not expected to have a material impact on the Company's financial position and results of operations.

In May 2017, the FASB issued ASU No. 2017-09, "Compensation – Stock Compensation (Topic 718) – Scope of Modification Accounting." ASU No. 2017-09 provides clarity and reduces complexity when applying the guidance in Topic 718 for changes in terms or conditions of share-based payment awards. It is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2017. The Company is currently evaluating the impact the adoption of this new standard will have on its financial statements.

In July 2017, the Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") issued a two-part Accounting Standards Update ("ASU") No. 2017-11, I. Accounting for Certain Financial Instruments With Down Round Features and II. Replacement of the Indefinite Deferral for Mandatorily Redeemable Financial Instruments of Certain Nonpublic Entities and Certain Mandatorily Redeemable Noncontrolling Interests With a Scope Exception ("ASU 2017-11"). ASU 2017-11 amends guidance in FASB ASC 260, Earnings Per Share, FASB ASC 480, Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity, and FASB ASC 815, Derivatives and Hedging. The amendments in Part I of ASU 2017-11 change the classification analysis of certain equity-linked financial instruments (or embedded features) with down round features. The amendments in Part II of ASU 2017-11 re-characterize the indefinite deferral of certain provisions of Topic 480 that now are presented as pending content in the Codification, to a scope exception. Those amendments do not have an accounting effect. ASU 2017-11 is effective for public business entities for fiscal years, and interim periods within those fiscal years, beginning after December 15, 2018. Early adoption is permitted. The Company is currently evaluating the impact the adoption of this new standard will have on its financial statements.

*Management's Evaluation of Subsequent Events*

The Company evaluates events that have occurred after the balance sheet date of December 31, 2017, through the date which the financial statements are issued. Based upon the review, other than the event disclosed in Note 12 – Subsequent Events, the Company did not identify any subsequent events that would have required adjustment or disclosure in the financial statements.

**Note 4 – Property and Equipment**

Property and equipment are as follows:

	As of December 31,	
	2017	2016
Computer software	\$ 1,418,457	\$ 1,085,258
Computer hardware	2,289,687	2,109,983
Furniture and fixtures	529,287	533,175
Leasehold improvements	613,111	613,111
	<u>4,850,542</u>	<u>4,341,527</u>
Less – accumulated depreciation	<u>(3,436,625)</u>	<u>(2,132,052)</u>
Total property and equipment, net	<u>\$ 1,413,917</u>	<u>\$ 2,209,475</u>

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 4 – Property and Equipment, continued**

The Company currently uses the following expected life terms for depreciating property and equipment: computer software – 1-2 years, computer hardware – 3 years, furniture and fixtures – 7 years, leasehold improvements – remaining life of the lease.

Total depreciation and amortization expense of the Company’s property and equipment was \$1,309,980, \$957,836 and \$817,729 for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

**Note 5 – Accrued Expenses**

Accrued expenses consist of the following:

	As of December 31,	
	2017	2016
Accrued compensation	\$ 948,935	\$ 997,908
Accrued legal expenses	445,684	283,160
Accrued equipment cost	—	299,500
Other accrued expenses	227,406	287,427
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$1,622,025</b>	<b>\$1,867,995</b>

**Note 6 – Commitments and Contingencies**

***Operating Leases***

On September 10, 2014, the Company entered into a Lease Agreement with Balzer Family Investments, L.P. (the “Landlord”) related to space located at Northpointe Business Center, 3590 North First Street, San Jose, California. The initial term of the lease is 60 months, with initial monthly base rent of \$36,720 and the lease is subject to certain annual escalations as defined in the agreement. On October 1, 2014, the Company relocated its headquarters to this new location. The Company issued to the Landlord 41,563 shares of the Company’s common stock valued at \$500,000, of which \$400,000 will be applied to reduce the Company’s monthly base rent obligation by \$6,732 per month and of which \$100,000 was for certain tenant improvements. The Company recorded \$400,000 as prepaid rent on its balance sheet, which is being amortized over the term of the lease and recorded \$100,000 as leasehold improvements.

On February 26, 2015, the Company entered into a sub-lease agreement for additional space in the San Jose, California area. The agreement has a term which expires on June 30, 2019 and a current monthly rent of \$6,493 per month. On August 25, 2015, the Company entered into an additional amended sub-lease agreement for additional space in San Jose, California. The agreement has a term which expires on June 30, 2019 and a current monthly rent of \$4,458 per month. These leases are subject to certain annual escalations as defined in the agreements.

On July 9, 2015, the Company entered into a sub-lease agreement for additional space in Costa Mesa, California. The agreement has a term which expired on September 30, 2017 and a monthly rent of \$6,376 per month. On May 31, 2017, the Company entered into a lease agreement for the same space in Costa Mesa, California. The agreement has a term that expires on September 30, 2019 with initial monthly rent of \$9,040 and is subject to certain annual escalations as defined in the agreement.

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 6 – Commitments and Contingencies, continued**

***Operating Leases, continued***

The future minimum lease payments for leased locations are as follows:

<b>For the Years Ended December 31,</b>	<b>Amount</b>
2018	\$ 640,202
2019	457,585
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$1,097,787</b>

***Development and Licensing Agreements***

In 2015, the Company signed a development and licensing agreement with a consumer electronics company to embed WattUp wire-free charging receiver technology in various products including, but not limited to, certain mobile consumer electronics and related accessories. On March 31, 2016, the Company received payment of \$500,000 pursuant to the February 15, 2016 commencement of the second phase described in the third amendment of this agreement, of which the Company recorded \$108,959 and \$391,041 in revenue during the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. During the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company also recognized milestone revenue of \$1,000,000 for both years related to this agreement.

In 2016, the Company entered into a development and license agreement with a commercial and industrial supply company, under which the Company developed wire-free charging solutions. The Company recognized \$44,550 and \$59,400 of revenue from this agreement during the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, the customers from the development and license agreement accounted for approximately 100% of the Company's revenue. As of December 31, 2017, the Company did not have an accounts receivable balance. As of December 31, 2016, the customers from these two agreements accounted for 100% of the accounts receivable balance.

***Hosted Design Solution Agreement***

On June 25, 2015, the Company entered into a three-year agreement to license electronic design automation software in a hosted environment. Pursuant to the agreement, under which services began July 13, 2015, the Company is required to remit quarterly payments in the amount of \$100,568 with the last payment due March 30, 2018. On December 18, 2015, the agreement was amended to redefine the hardware and software configuration and the quarterly payments increased to \$198,105.

***Amended Employee Agreement – Stephen Rizzone***

On April 3, 2015, the Company entered into an Amended and Restated Executive Employment Agreement with Stephen R. Rizzone, the Company's President and Chief Executive Officer ("Employment Agreement").

The Employment Agreement has an effective date of January 1, 2015 and an initial term of four years (the "Initial Employment Period"). The Employment Agreement provides for an annual base salary of \$365,000, and Mr. Rizzone is eligible to receive quarterly cash bonuses with a total target amount equal to 100% of his base salary based upon achievement of performance-based objectives established by the Company's board of directors.

Pursuant to Mr. Rizzone's prior employment agreement, on December 12, 2013 Mr. Rizzone was granted a ten year option to purchase 275,689 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$1.68 vesting over four years

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 6 – Commitments and Contingencies, continued**

*Amended Employee Agreement – Stephen Rizzone, continued*

in 48 monthly installments beginning October 1, 2013 (“First Option”). Mr. Rizzone was also granted a second option award to purchase 496,546 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$6.00 (“Second Option”). The Second Option vests over the same vesting schedule as the First Option.

Effective May 21, 2015, with the approval by the Company’s stockholders of its new performance-based equity plan, the Employment Agreement provided and Mr. Rizzone received, a grant of 639,075 Performance Share Units (the “PSUs”). The PSUs, which represent the right to receive shares of common stock, shall be earned based on the Company’s achievement of market capitalization growth between the effective date of the Employment Agreement and the end of the Initial Employment Period. If the Company’s market capitalization is \$100 million or less, no PSUs will be earned. If the Company reaches a market capitalization of \$1.1 billion or more, 100% of the PSUs will be earned. For market capitalization between \$100 million and \$1.1 billion, the percentage of PSUs earned will be determined on a quarterly basis based on straight line interpolation. PSUs earned as of the end of a calendar quarter will be paid 50% immediately and 50% will be deferred until the end of the Initial Employment Period subject to Mr. Rizzone’s continued employment with the Company (See Note 8).

Mr. Rizzone is also eligible to receive all customary and usual benefits generally available to senior executives of the Company.

The Employment Agreement provides that if Mr. Rizzone’s employment is terminated due to his death or disability, if Mr. Rizzone’s employment is terminated by the Company without cause or if he resigns for good reason, twenty-five percent (25%) of the shares subject to the First Option and the Second Option shall immediately vest and become exercisable, he will have a period of one year post-termination to exercise the First Option and the Second Option, and if a Liquidation Event (as defined in the Employment Agreement) shall occur prior to the termination of the First Option and the Second Option, one hundred percent (100%) of the shares subject to the First Option and Second Option shall immediately vest and become exercisable effective immediately prior to the consummation of the Liquidation Event. In addition, any outstanding deferred PSUs shall be immediately vested and paid, but any remaining unearned portion of the PSUs shall immediately be canceled and forfeited.

***Strategic Alliance Agreement***

In November 2016, the Company and Dialog, a related party (see Note 10—Related Party Transactions), entered into a Strategic Alliance Agreement (“Alliance Agreement”) for the manufacture, distribution and commercialization of products incorporating the Company’s wire-free charging technology (“Licensed Products”). Pursuant to the terms of the Alliance Agreement, the Company agreed to engage Dialog as the exclusive supplier of the Licensed Products for specified fields of use, subject to certain exceptions (the “Company Exclusivity Requirement”). Dialog agreed to not distribute, sell or work with any third party to develop any competing products without the Company’s approval (the “Dialog Exclusivity Requirement”). In addition, both parties agreed on a revenue sharing arrangement and will collaborate on the commercialization of Licensed Products based on a mutually-agreed upon plan. Each party will retain all of its intellectual property.

The Alliance Agreement has an initial term of seven years and will automatically renew annually thereafter unless terminated by either party upon 180 days’ prior written notice. The Company may terminate the Alliance Agreement at any time after the third anniversary of the Agreement upon 180 days’ prior written notice to Dialog, or if Dialog breaches certain exclusivity obligations. Dialog may terminate the Alliance Agreement if sales of Licensed Products do not meet specified targets. The Company Exclusivity Requirement will terminate

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 6 – Commitments and Contingencies, continued**

*Strategic Alliance Agreement, continued*

upon the earlier of January 1, 2021 or the occurrence of certain events relating to the Company's pre-existing exclusivity obligations. The Dialog Exclusivity Requirement will terminate if no Licensed Products have received the necessary Federal Communications Commission approvals within specified timeframes.

In addition to the Alliance Agreement, the Company and Dialog entered into two securities purchase agreements (see Note 7 - Stockholders' Equity).

**Note 7 – Stockholders' Equity**

*Authorized Capital*

The holders of the Company's common stock are entitled to one vote per share. Holders of common stock are entitled to receive ratably such dividends, if any, as may be declared by the board of directors out of legally available funds. Upon the liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company, holders of common stock are entitled to share ratably in all assets of the Company that are legally available for distribution.

*Filing of Registration Statement*

On April 24, 2015, the Company filed a "shelf" registration statement on Form S-3, which became effective on April 30, 2015. The "shelf" registration statement allows the Company from time to time to sell any combination of debt or equity securities described in the registration statement up to aggregate proceeds of \$75,000,000.

Pursuant to the shelf registration, on November 17, 2015, the Company consummated an offering of 3,000,005 shares of common stock at \$6.90 per share and received from the underwriters' net proceeds of \$19,333,032 (net of underwriters' discount of \$1,242,002 and underwriters' offering expenses of \$125,000). The Company incurred additional offering expenses of \$284,576, yielding net proceeds from the offering under shelf registration of \$19,048,456. Also, as noted in Note 12—Subsequent Events, the Company raised net proceeds of \$38,999,989 (net of underwriters' discount of \$1,000,000) from the sales of 2,221,455 shares of stock in January 2018.

*Private Placements*

On August 9, 2016, the Company entered into a securities purchase agreement with Ascend Legend Master Fund, Ltd. pursuant to which the Company agreed to sell to Ascend Legend Master Fund, Ltd., and its affiliates, 1,618,123 shares of common stock at a price of \$12.36 per share and a warrant to purchase up to 1,618,123 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$23.00 per share. The aggregate proceeds from the sale of these shares was \$20,000,000.

On November 7, 2016, the Company and Dialog, a related party (see Note 10—Related Party Transactions), entered into a securities purchase agreement pursuant to which the Company agreed to sell to Dialog 763,552 shares of common stock at a price of \$13.0967 per share and a warrant to purchase up to 763,552 shares of common stock that may be exercised only on a cashless basis at a price of \$17.0257 per share, and may be exercised at any time between the date that is six months and a day after the closing date of the transaction and the three-year anniversary of the closing date. The aggregate proceeds from the sale of these shares was \$10,000,011.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 7 – Stockholders’ Equity, continued**

*Private Placements, continued*

On December 30, 2016, the Company and JT Group entered into a securities purchase agreement pursuant to which the Company agreed to sell to JT Group 292,056 shares of common stock at a price of \$17.12 per share. The aggregate proceeds from the sale of these shares was \$4,999,975.

On June 28, 2017, the Company and Dialog Semiconductor, a related party (see Note 10 – Related Party Transactions), entered into a securities purchase agreement pursuant to which the Company agreed to sell Dialog 976,139 shares of common stock at a price of \$15.3666 per share and a warrant to purchase up to 654,013 shares of common stock that may be exercised only on a cashless basis at a price of \$19.9766 per share, and may be exercised at any time between the date that is six months and one day after the closing date of the transaction and the three-year anniversary of the closing date. The aggregate proceeds from the sale of these shares, which were issued on July 5, 2017, was \$14,999,935.

**Note 8 – Stock Based Compensation**

*Equity Incentive Plans*

2013 Equity Incentive Plan

In December 2013, the Company’s board of directors and stockholders approved the Company’s 2013 Equity Incentive Plan, providing for the issuance of equity based instruments covering up to an initial total of 1,042,167 shares of common stock.

Effective on March 10, 2014, the Company’s board of directors and stockholders approved the First Amendment to the 2013 Equity Incentive Plan which provided for an increase in the aggregate number of shares of common stock that may be issued pursuant to the Plan to equal 18% of the total number of shares of common stock outstanding immediately following the completion of the IPO (assuming for this purpose the issuance of all shares issuable under the Company’s equity plans, the conversion into common stock of all outstanding securities that are convertible by their terms into common stock and the exercise of all options and warrants exercisable for shares of common stock and including shares and warrants issued to the underwriters for such IPO upon exercise of its over-allotment options).

Effective March 27, 2014, the aggregate total shares which may be issued under the 2013 Equity Incentive Plan were increased to 2,335,967.

Effective on May 19, 2016, the Company’s stockholders approved the amendment and restatement of the 2013 Equity Incentive Plan to increase the number of shares reserved for issuance thereunder by 2,150,000 shares, bringing the total number of approved shares to 4,485,967 under the 2013 Equity Incentive Plan.

As of December 31, 2017, 829,515 shares of common stock remain eligible to be issued through equity-based instruments under the 2013 Equity Incentive Plan.

2014 Non-Employee Equity Compensation Plan

On March 6, 2014, the Company’s board of directors and stockholders approved the 2014 Non-Employee Equity Compensation Plan for the issuance of equity-based instruments covering up to 250,000 shares of common stock to directors and other non-employees.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 8 – Stock Based Compensation, continued**

*Equity Incentive Plans, continued*

Effective on May 19, 2016, the Company's stockholders approved the amendment and restatement of the 2014 Equity Incentive Plan to increase the number of shares reserved for issuance thereunder by 350,000 shares, bringing the total number of approved shares to 600,000 under the 2014 Non-Employee Equity Compensation Plan.

As of December 31, 2017, 292,655 shares of common stock remain eligible to be issued through equity-based instruments under the 2014 Non-Employee Equity Compensation Plan.

2015 Performance Share Unit Plan

On April 10, 2015, the Company's board of directors approved the Energoous Corporation 2015 Performance Share Unit Plan (the "Performance Share Plan"), under which 1,310,104 shares of common stock became available for issuance as PSUs to a select group of employees and directors, subject to approval by the stockholders. On May 21, 2015 the Company's stockholders approved the Performance Share Plan.

As of December 31, 2017, 31,951 shares of common stock remain eligible to be issued through equity based instruments under the Performance Share Unit Plan.

2017 Equity Inducement Plan

On December 28, 2017, the Board of Directors approved the 2017 Equity Inducement Plan. Under the plan, the Board of Directors reserved 600,000 shares for the grant of RSUs. These grants will be administered by a committee of the Board of Directors or the Board of Directors acting as a Committee. These awards will be granted to individuals who (a) are being hired as an Employee by the Company or any Subsidiary and such Award is a material inducement to such person being hired; (b) are being rehired as an Employee following a bona fide period of interruption of employment with the Company or any Subsidiary; or (c) will become an Employee of the Company or any Subsidiary in connection with a merger or acquisition.

Employee Stock Purchase Plan

On April 10, 2015, the Company's board of directors approved the ESPP, under which 600,000 shares of common stock have been reserved for purchase by the Company's employees, subject to approval by the stockholders. On May 21, 2015, the Company's stockholders approved the ESPP. Employees may designate an amount not less than 1% but not more than 10% of their annual compensation, but for not more than 7,500 shares during an offering period. An offering period shall be six months in duration commencing on or about January 1 and July 1 of each year. The exercise price of the option will be the lesser of 85% of the fair market of the common stock on the first business day of the offering period and 85% of the fair market value of the common stock on the applicable exercise date.

As of December 31, 2017, 405,921 shares of common stock remain eligible to be issued through equity based instruments under the ESPP. For the year ended December 31, 2017, eligible employees contributed \$869,066 through payroll deductions to the ESPP and 64,542 shares were deemed delivered for the year ended December 31, 2017. For the year ended December 31, 2016, eligible employees contributed \$727,784 through payroll deductions to the ESPP and 85,356 shares were deemed delivered for the year ended December 31, 2016.

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 8 – Stock Based Compensation, continued**

***Stock Option Award Activity***

The following is a summary of the Company's stock option activity during the year ended December 31, 2017:

	Number of Options	Weighted Average Exercise Price	Weighted Average Remaining Life In Years	Intrinsic Value
Outstanding at January 1, 2017	1,309,444	\$ 4.55	7.1	\$16,107,929
Granted	—	—	—	—
Exercised	(272,205)	3.60	—	—
Forfeited	—	—	—	—
Outstanding at December 31, 2017	<u>1,037,239</u>	<u>\$ 4.80</u>	<u>6.4</u>	<u>\$15,198,044</u>
Exercisable at December 31, 2017	<u>1,037,239</u>	<u>\$ 4.80</u>	<u>6.4</u>	<u>\$15,198,044</u>

As of December 31, 2017, the unamortized value of options was \$0.

The aggregate intrinsic value of options exercised was \$2,864,845, \$984,144 and \$92,728 for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

No options were granted during the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015.

***Restricted Stock Units (“RSUs”)***

During the first quarter of 2017, the compensation committee of the board of directors (“Compensation Committee”) granted various directors RSUs under which the holders have the right to receive an aggregate of 48,844 shares of common stock. These awards were granted under the 2014 Non-Employee Equity Compensation Plan. The awards vest fully on the first anniversary of the grant date.

During the first quarter of 2017, the Compensation Committee granted employees RSU awards under which the holders have the right to receive an aggregate of 246,000 shares of common stock. The awards vest over four years beginning on the anniversary of the employee hire dates.

During the first quarter of 2017, the Compensation Committee granted various employees RSU awards under the 2013 Equity Incentive Plan under which the holders have the right to receive an aggregate of 351,080 shares of common stock. The awards vest over terms from two to four years.

During the second quarter of 2017, the Compensation Committee granted various consultants RSUs under which the holders have the right to receive an aggregate of 8,400 shares of common stock. These awards were granted under the 2014 Non-Employee Equity Compensation Plan. The awards vest over terms from two to four years.

During the second quarter of 2017, the Compensation Committee granted employees RSU awards under which the holders have the right to receive an aggregate of 120,000 shares of common stock. A majority of the awards vest over four years beginning on the anniversary of the employee hire dates.

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 8 – Stock Based Compensation, continued**

***Restricted Stock Units (“RSUs”), continued***

During the second quarter of 2017, the Compensation Committee granted employees RSU awards under the 2013 Equity Incentive Plan under which the holders have the right to receive an aggregate of 308,059 shares of common stock. The awards vest over terms from two to four years.

During the third quarter of 2017, the Compensation Committee granted employees RSU awards under the 2013 Equity Incentive Plan under which the holders have the right to receive an aggregate of 117,514 shares of common stock. The awards vest over terms from two to four years.

During the fourth quarter of 2017, the Compensation Committee granted employees RSU awards under the 2013 Equity Incentive Plan under which the holders have the right to receive an aggregate of 53,188 shares of common stock. A majority of the awards vest over a four year term.

The Company accounts for RSUs granted to consultants using the accounting guidance included in ASC 505-50 “Equity-Based Payments to Non-Employees” (“ASC 505-50”). In accordance with ASC 505-50, the Company estimates the fair value of the unvested portion of the RSU award each reporting period using the closing price of the Company’s common stock.

At December 31, 2017, the unamortized value of the RSUs was \$24,701,605. The unamortized amount will be expensed over a weighted average period of 2.7 years. A summary of the activity related to RSUs for the year ended December 31, 2017 is presented below:

	Total	Weighted Average Grant Date Fair Value
Outstanding at January 1, 2017	2,052,223	\$ 11.58
RSUs granted	1,253,085	\$ 15.81
RSUs forfeited	(249,928)	\$ 12.63
RSUs vested	(781,055)	\$ 11.53
Outstanding at December 31, 2017	<u>2,274,325</u>	<u>\$ 13.75</u>

***Performance Share Units (“PSUs”)***

Performance share units (“PSUs”) are grants that vest upon the achievement of certain performance goals. The goals are commonly related to the Company’s market capitalization or market share price of the common stock.

The PSUs originally issued during 2015 to certain board members and senior management shall be earned based on the Company’s achievement of market capitalization growth between the effective date of the Employment Agreement and the end of the Initial Employment Period. If the Company’s market capitalization is \$100 million or less, no PSUs will be earned. If the Company reaches a market capitalization of \$1.1 billion or more, 100% of the PSUs will be earned. For market capitalization between \$100 million and \$1.1 billion, the percentage of PSUs earned will be determined on a quarterly basis based on straight line interpolation.

The Company determined that the PSUs were equity awards with both market and service conditions. The Company utilized a Monte Carlo simulation to determine the fair value of the market condition, as described

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 8 – Stock Based Compensation, continued**

***Performance Share Units (“PSUs”), continued***

below. Grantees of PSUs are required to be employed through December 31, 2018 in order to earn the entire award, if and when vested. No PSUs were granted during the year ended December 31, 2017.

	Performance Share Units (PSUs) Granted During the Year Ended December 31, 2016
Market capitalization	\$ 106,600,000
Dividend yield	0%
Expected volatility	75%
Risk-free interest rate	1.04%

The fair value of the grants of PSUs to purchase a total of 1,342,061 shares of common stock (including 1,278,153 PSUs granted under the 2015 Performance Share Unit Plan and 63,908 granted as an inducement) was determined to be approximately \$3,218,000, and is amortized over the service period of May 21, 2015 through December 31, 2018, on a straight-line basis.

On October 24, 2016, the compensation committee of the board of directors granted Mr. Rizzone a PSU award under the 2013 Equity Incentive Plan under which Mr. Rizzone has the right to receive 150,000 shares of the Company’s common stock. The shares of this award vest upon the Company’s stock price meeting specific targets.

For the PSU award grant issued to Mr. Rizzone, a Monte Carlo simulation was used to determine the fair value at each of the five target prices of the Company’s common stock, using a market capitalization of \$298,857,000, dividend yield of 0%, expected volatility of 75% and a risk-free interest rate of 0.66%.

The fair value of the PSUs granted to Mr. Rizzone under the 2013 Equity Incentive Plan was determined to be \$2,332,000, and is amortized over the estimated service period from October 24, 2016 through October 30, 2017.

Amortization for all PSU awards was \$1,661,650 and \$2,285,683 for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

At December 31, 2017, the unamortized value of all PSUs was approximately \$819,910. The unamortized amount will be expensed over a weighted average period of 1.0 years. A summary of the activity related to PSUs for the year ended December 31, 2017 is presented below:

	Total	Weighted Average Grant Date Fair Value
Outstanding at January 1, 2017	1,153,617	\$ 3.66
PSUs granted	—	\$ —
PSUs forfeited	(111,960)	\$ 2.62
PSUs vested	(90,000)	\$ 13.82
Outstanding at December 31, 2017	951,657	\$ 2.65

***Deferred Stock Units (“DSUs”)***

On January 4, 2016, the compensation committee of the board of directors granted to John Gaulding, director and chairman of the board, DSUs under the 2014 Non-Employee Equity Compensation Plan for which

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 8 – Stock Based Compensation, continued**

*Deferred Stock Units (“DSUs”), continued*

Mr. Gaulding has the right to receive 14,953 shares of the Company’s common stock. These shares were issued to Mr. Gaulding in lieu of \$125,000 of his anticipated compensation for his services on the board, including \$75,000 worth of DSUs and \$50,000 of his regular board stipends. The award granted vests fully on the first anniversary of the grant date. Amortization was \$1,362 and \$123,644 for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

At December 31, 2017, the unamortized value of the DSUs was \$0. A summary of the activity related to DSUs for the year ended December 31, 2017 is presented below:

	Total	Weighted Average Grant Date Fair Value
Outstanding at January 1, 2017	14,953	\$ 8.36
DSUs granted	—	\$ —
DSUs forfeited	—	\$ —
DSUs vested	(14,953)	\$ 8.36
Outstanding at December 31, 2017	—	\$ —

*Employee Stock Purchase Plan (“ESPP”)*

During the year ended December 31, 2017, there were two offering periods for the ESPP. The first offering period started on January 1, 2017 and concluded on June 30, 2017. The second offering period started on July 1, 2017 and concluded on December 31, 2017. During the year ended December 31, 2016, there were also two offering periods for the ESPP. The first offering period started on January 1, 2016 and concluded on June 30, 2016. The second offering period started on July 1, 2016 and concluded on December 31, 2016. During the year ended December 31, 2015, there was one initial offering period for the ESPP which started on July 1, 2015 and concluded on December 31, 2015.

The weighted-average grant-date fair value of the purchase option for each designated share purchased under this plan was approximately \$5.42, \$5.20 and \$2.46 during the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively, which represents the fair value of the option, consisting of three main components: (i) the value of the discount on the enrollment date, (ii) the proportionate value of the call option for 85% of the stock and (iii) the proportionate value of the put option for 15% of the stock. The Company recognized compensation expense for the plan of \$331,913, \$318,735 and \$113,217 for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 8 – Stock Based Compensation, continued**

***Employee Stock Purchase Plan (“ESPP”), continued***

The Company estimated the fair value of the purchase options granted during the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 using the Black-Scholes option pricing model. The fair values of the purchase options granted were estimated using the following assumptions:

	For the Year Ended December 31, 2017
Stock price range	\$ 16.08 -17.59
Dividend yield	0%
Expected volatility range	56 – 66%
Risk-free interest rate range	0.62 – 1.11%
Expected life	6 months

  

	For the Year Ended December 31, 2016
Stock price range	\$ 8.36 – 12.16
Dividend yield	0%
Expected volatility range	56 – 100%
Risk-free interest rate range	0.37 – 0.49%
Expected life	6 months

  

	For the Year Ended December 31, 2015
Stock price	\$ 7.41
Dividend yield	0%
Expected volatility	65%
Risk-free interest rate	0.13%
Expected life	6 months

***Stock-Based Compensation Expense***

The following tables summarize total stock-based compensation costs recognized for years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015:

	For the Years Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Stock options	\$ 764,723	\$1,045,081	\$1,037,399
RSUs	13,043,171	5,735,032	4,225,728
PSUs	1,661,650	2,285,683	489,239
DSUs	1,362	123,644	—
ESPP	331,913	318,735	113,217
IR warrants	—	—	85,831
Total	<u>\$15,802,819</u>	<u>\$9,508,175</u>	<u>\$5,951,414</u>

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 8 – Stock Based Compensation, continued**

*Stock-Based Compensation Expense, continued*

The total amount of stock-based compensation was reflected within the statements of operations as:

	For the Years Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Research and development	\$ 8,522,798	\$4,226,304	\$2,816,707
Sales and marketing	1,113,120	328,760	729,329
General and administrative	6,166,901	4,953,111	2,405,378
Total	<u>\$15,802,819</u>	<u>\$9,508,175</u>	<u>\$5,951,414</u>

**Note 9 – Income Taxes**

On December 22, 2017, the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (the “2017 Tax Act”) was enacted. The 2017 Tax Act includes a number of changes to existing U.S. tax laws that impact the company, most notably a reduction of the U.S. corporate income tax rate from 35 percent to 21 percent for tax years beginning after December 31, 2017. The company measures deferred tax assets and liabilities using enacted tax rates that will apply in the years in which the temporary differences are expected to be recovered or paid. Accordingly, the company’s deferred tax assets and liabilities were remeasured to reflect the reduction in the U.S. corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21%, resulting in a \$19,432,000 decrease in net deferred tax assets for the year ended December 31, 2017 and a corresponding \$19,432,000 decrease in valuation allowance as of December 31, 2017.

The SEC staff issued Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 118 (“SAB 118”) to address the application of U.S. GAAP in situations when a registrant does not have the necessary information available, prepared, or analyzed (including computations) in reasonable detail to complete the accounting for certain income tax effects of the 2017 Tax Act. SAB 118 provides a measurement period that should not extend beyond one year from the 2017 Tax Act enactment date for companies to complete the accounting for the income tax effects of certain elements of the 2017 Tax Act. In accordance with SAB 118, we have recognized the provisional tax impacts related to the remeasurement of deferred tax assets and liabilities and included these amounts in our financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2017. The ultimate impact may differ from these provisional amounts, possibly materially, due to, among other things, additional analysis, changes in interpretations and assumptions we have made, additional regulatory guidance that may be issued, and actions we may take as a result of the 2017 Tax Act.

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 9 – Income Taxes, continued**

As of December 31, 2017, and 2016, the Company's deferred tax assets (liabilities) consisted of the effects of temporary differences attributable to the following:

	December 31,	
	2017	2016
Deferred tax assets (liabilities):		
Tax credit	\$ 4,335,394	\$ 2,802,573
Net operating loss carryovers	23,630,008	16,174,712
Property and equipment	99,756	(58,747)
Research and development costs	15,372,328	18,628,913
Start-up and organizational costs	774	1,222
Stock-based compensation	2,473,591	1,829,843
Other accruals	260,113	341,090
Total gross deferred tax assets	46,171,964	39,719,606
Less: valuation allowance	(46,171,964)	(39,719,606)
Deferred tax assets, net	\$ —	\$ —

The change in the Company's valuation allowance is as follows:

	2017	2016
January 1,	\$39,719,606	\$22,085,888
Increase in valuation allowance	6,452,358	17,633,718
December 31,	\$46,171,964	\$39,719,606

The Company has federal and state net operating loss carryovers of approximately \$84,418,000 and \$85,515,000, respectively, available to offset future taxable income. The federal and state NOL carryforwards will expire at various dates beginning in 2033. The Company has federal and state research and development tax credit carryovers of approximately \$2,686,000 and \$2,088,000, respectively. The federal R&D credit carryovers will expire beginning in 2032 and state R&D credit carryovers do not expire. The ultimate realization of the net operating loss is dependent upon future taxable income, if any, of the Company and may be limited in any one period by alternative minimum tax rules. Although management believes that the Company may have sufficient future taxable income to absorb the net operating loss carryovers and research and development tax credit carryovers before the expiration of the carryover period, there may be circumstances beyond the Company's control that limit such utilization. Accordingly, management has determined that a full valuation allowance of the deferred tax asset is appropriate at December 31, 2017 and 2016.

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 9 – Income Taxes, continued**

Internal Revenue Code Section 382 imposes limitations on the use of net operating loss carryovers when the stock ownership of one or more 5% shareholders (shareholders owning 5% or more of the Company's outstanding capital stock) has increased on a cumulative basis by more than 50 percentage points. Management cannot control the ownership changes occurring as a result of public trading of the Company's Common Stock. Accordingly, there is a risk of an ownership change beyond the control of the Company that could trigger a limitation of the use of the loss carryover. The Company completed a Section 382 analysis as of December 31, 2017 and determined that none of its NOLs or R&D credits would be limited.

	For the Year Ended December 31,	
	2017	2016
Tax benefit at federal statutory rate	(34.0)%	(34.0)%
State income taxes	(10.2)	(5.7)
Permanent differences:		
Stock-based compensation	(2.5)	0.8
Meals and entertainment	0.1	0.1
True-up of federal deferred taxes	(2.8)	1.7
True-up of state deferred taxes	—	1.2
Change in effective tax rate	39.4	—
Research and development tax credit, federal	(1.4)	(1.5)
Research and development tax credit, state	(1.6)	(1.1)
Increase in valuation allowance, federal	1.3	32.9
Increase in valuation allowance, state	11.7	5.6
Effective income tax rate	0.0%	0.0%

**Note 10 – Related Party Transactions**

On July 14, 2014, the Company's Board of Directors appointed Howard Yeaton as the Company's Interim Chief Financial Officer. On July 13, 2015, the Company appointed Brian Sereda as the Company's Chief Financial Officer, replacing Interim Chief Financial Officer Howard Yeaton. Howard Yeaton is the Managing Principal of Financial Consulting Strategies LLC ("FCS"). During the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, the Company had incurred fees of \$0, \$0 and \$61,848 in connection with Mr. Yeaton's services as Interim Chief Financial Officer. During the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, the Company incurred fees of \$0, \$13,306 and \$88,813 for other financial advisory and accounting services provided by FCS.

In November 2016, the Company and Dialog Semiconductor plc ("Dialog") entered into an Alliance Agreement for the manufacture, distribution and commercialization of products incorporating the Company's wire-free charging technology (See Note 6 - Commitments and Contingencies, *Strategic Alliance Agreement*). On November 7, 2016 and June 28, 2017, the Company and Dialog entered into securities purchase agreements under which Dialog acquired a total of 1,739,691 shares and received warrants to purchase up to 1,417,565 shares (See Note 7 - Stockholders' Equity, *Private Placements*). Dialog presently owns approximately 7.7% of the Company's outstanding common shares, and could potentially own approximately 13.2% of the Company's outstanding common shares if it exercised all of its warrants for common shares. For the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company paid \$516,725 to Dialog for chip development costs incurred, which is recorded under research and development expense.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**  
**Notes to Financial Statements**

**Note 11 – Unaudited Quarterly Financial Information**

Summarized quarterly information for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 is listed below:

	For the quarter ended			
	March 31	June 30	September 30	December 31
<b>2017</b>				
Revenue	\$ 575,368	\$ 299,506	\$ 250,000	\$ 29,135
Operating expenses	\$ 13,051,387	\$ 13,220,879	\$ 13,001,623	\$ 11,267,948
Net loss	\$(12,473,140)	\$(12,919,010)	\$(12,748,248)	\$(11,236,477)
Loss per share, basic and diluted	\$ (0.61)	\$ (0.63)	\$ (0.58)	\$ (0.50)
<b>2016</b>				
Revenue	\$ 136,364	\$ 181,818	\$ 1,003,973	\$ 129,786
Operating expenses	\$ 10,936,772	\$ 10,468,990	\$ 11,131,994	\$ 14,744,905
Net loss	\$(10,796,542)	\$(10,284,555)	\$(10,125,063)	\$(14,611,234)
Loss per share, basic and diluted	\$ (0.66)	\$ (0.62)	\$ (0.57)	\$ (0.75)

**Note 12 – Subsequent Events**

During January 2018, the Company raised \$38,999,989 (net of underwriters' discount of \$1,000,000) from the sale of stock to the public in an "at-the-market" equity offering of its common stock.

In March 2018, the Company's Board of Directors ("Board"), on the recommendation of the Board's Compensation Committee ("Compensation Committee"), approved the Energoous Corporation MBO Bonus Plan ("Bonus Plan") for executive officers of the Company. To be eligible to receive a bonus under the Bonus Plan, an executive officer must be continuously employed throughout the applicable performance period, and in good standing, and achieve the performance objectives selected by the Compensation Committee.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**Item 9. Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure.**

None.

**Item 9A. Controls and Procedures.**

**Evaluation of Disclosure Controls and Procedures**

We have established disclosure controls and procedures to ensure that material information relating to us is made known to the officers who certify our financial reports and the board of directors.

Based on their evaluation as of December 31, 2017, our principal executive and principal financial and accounting officers have concluded that these disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e) under the Exchange Act) were effective as of December 31, 2017 to provide reasonable assurance that information required to be disclosed by us in reports that we file under the Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized, and reported, within the time periods specified in Securities and Exchange Commission rules and forms and that material information relating to the Company is accumulated and communicated to management, including our principal executive officer and our principal financial officer, as appropriate to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosures.

**Management's Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting**

Our management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting as such term is defined in Exchange Act Rule 13a-15(f). Internal control over financial reporting is a process used to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of our financial reporting and the preparation of our financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States. Internal control over financial reporting includes policies and procedures that pertain to the maintenance of records that in reasonable detail accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of our assets; provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of our financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States, and that our receipts and expenditures are being made only in accordance with the authorization of our board of directors and management; and provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of our assets that could have a material effect on our financial statements.

An internal control system over financial reporting has inherent limitations and may not prevent or detect misstatements. Therefore, even those systems determined to be effective can provide only reasonable assurance with respect to financial statement preparation and presentation. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate. However, these inherent limitations are known features of the financial reporting process. Therefore, it is possible to design into the process safeguards to reduce, though not eliminate, this risk.

The Company's management, under the supervision of and with the participation of the principal executive and principal financial and accounting officers, have assessed the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017 based on criteria for effective control over financial reporting described in *Internal Control — Integrated Framework* (2013) created by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO). Based on this assessment, the Company's management concluded that the Company's internal control over financial reporting was effective as of December 31, 2017.

This Annual Report on Form 10-K does not include an attestation report of our independent registered public accounting firm regarding internal control over financial reporting as such report is not required at this time under the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**Changes in Internal Control Over Financial Reporting**

For the year ended December 31, 2017, there were no changes in our internal control over financial reporting that have materially affected, or are reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

**Limitations on the Effectiveness of Controls**

A control system, no matter how well conceived and operated, can provide only reasonable, not absolute, assurance that the objectives of the control system are met. Because of the inherent limitations in all control systems, no evaluation of controls can provide absolute assurance that all control issues and instances of fraud, if any, within a company have been detected. Our disclosure controls and procedures are designed to provide reasonable assurance of achieving its objectives. Our principal executive and principal financial and accounting officer concluded that our disclosure controls and procedures are effective at that reasonable assurance level.

**Item 9B. Other Information.**

**Approval of Energois Corporation MBO Bonus Plan**

On March 15, 2018, the Company's Board of Directors ("Board"), on the recommendation of the Board's Compensation Committee ("Compensation Committee"), approved the Energois Corporation MBO Bonus Plan ("Bonus Plan") for executive officers of the Company. To be eligible to receive a bonus under the Bonus Plan, an executive officer must be continuously employed throughout the applicable performance period, and in good standing, and achieve the performance objectives selected by the Compensation Committee.

Under the Bonus Plan, the Compensation Committee is responsible for selecting the amounts of potential bonuses for executive officers, the performance metrics used to determine whether any such bonuses will be paid, and determining whether those performance metrics have been achieved.

The Compensation Committee may select one or more performance metrics from among the following measures, in any combination, on a GAAP or non-GAAP basis, and measured, on an absolute basis or relative to a pre-established target.

- (a) Bookings or billings;
- (b) Revenue or net revenue;
- (c) Gross profit or gross margin;
- (d) Operating income and Operating margin;
- (e) Net income;
- (f) Operating expenses or operating margin;
- (g) Net income;
- (h) Earnings (which may include earnings before interest and taxes, earnings before taxes, net earnings, stock-based compensation expenses, depreciation and amortization), including earnings per share;
- (i) Total stockholder return;
- (j) Market share;
- (k) Return on assets or net assets;
- (l) The Company's stock price;
- (m) Growth in stockholder value relative to a pre-determined index;
- (n) Return on equity;

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

### [Index to Financial Statements](#)

- (o) Return on invested capital;
- (p) Cash flow (including free cash flow or operating cash flows)
- (q) Cash conversion cycle;
- (r) Economic value added;
- (s) Individual confidential business objectives;
- (t) Contract awards or backlog;
- (u) Expense reduction;
- (v) Credit rating;
- (w) Strategic plan development and implementation;
- (x) Succession plan development and implementation;
- (y) Improvement in workforce diversity;
- (z) Customer satisfaction;
- (aa) New product invention or innovation;
- (bb) Attainment of research and development milestones;
- (cc) Improvements in productivity;
- (dd) Balance of cash, cash equivalents and marketable securities;
- (ee) Completion of an identified special project;
- (ff) Completion of a joint venture or other corporate transaction;
- (gg) Employee satisfaction and/or retention;
- (hh) Research and development expenses;
- (ii) Working capital targets and changes in working capital;
- (jj) Completion of a goal within an existing contract;
- (kk) Revenue related to a particular product, service or customer; group of products services, or customers or type of products, services or customers;
- (ll) Attainment of regulatory goals or milestones;
- (mm) Attainment of any phase of a development, design, fabrication, production or fulfillment goal;
- (nn) Customer acquisition, retention or engagement;
- (oo) Completion of financing goals; and
- (pp) Any other metric that is capable of measurement as determined by or suggested to the Committee.

### **Approval of Severance and Change in Control Agreement**

On March 15, 2018, the Compensation Committee approved a form of Severance and Change in Control Agreement (“Severance Agreement”) that the Company may enter into with executive officers (“Executives”).

Under the Severance Agreement, if an Executive is terminated in a qualifying termination, the Company agrees to pay the Executive six to 12 months of that Executive’s monthly base salary. If Executive elects continued coverage under the Consolidated Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1985, as amended (“COBRA”) the Company will pay the full amount of Executive’s premiums under the Company’s health, dental and vision plans, including coverage for the Executive’s eligible dependents, for the six to 12 month period following the Executive’s termination.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

If an Executive is terminated in a change in control qualifying termination (“CIC Qualifying Termination”), as defined in the Severance Agreement, the Company agrees to pay the Executive: six to 12 months of the Executive’s monthly base salary, and an amount up to 100% of the Executive’s target bonus, and a prorated bonus for the year in which such CIC Qualifying Termination occurs. Finally, the Company will have the ability to allow 0 to 100% of the executive’s unvested time or performance based equity awards, as defined in the severance agreement, to become fully vested.

The Executive’s potential COBRA benefits under a CIC Qualifying Termination are the same as for a qualifying termination above. Additionally, in the case of a CIC Qualifying Termination, each of Executive’s then-outstanding unvested equity awards, as defined in the Severance Agreement and including awards that would otherwise vest only upon satisfaction of performance criteria, accelerate and become vested and exercisable with respect to 100% of the then unvested shares subject to all equity awards.

Under the Severance Agreement, the Executive agrees to sign a general release of claims, and to cooperation and non-disparagement covenants lasting six months after the Executive’s termination. The Severance Agreement terminates three years after its effective date.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

PART III

**Item 10. Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance.**

The information required under this item is incorporated by reference to the following sections of our proxy statement for our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders: “Executive Compensation,” “Information Concerning Executive Officers,” “Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance,” “Corporate Governance Principles and Board Matters,” and “The Board of Directors and its Committees.”

**Item 11. Executive Compensation**

Additional information required under this item is incorporated by reference to the following sections of our proxy statement for our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders: “Executive Compensation,” and “The Board of Directors and its Committees.”

**Item 12. Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholders Matters.**

The information required under this item is incorporated by reference to the following sections of our proxy statement for our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders: “Executive Compensation” and “Securities Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management.”

**Item 13. Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence**

The information required under this item is incorporated by reference to the following sections of our proxy statement for our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders: “Certain Relationships and Related Transactions” and “Corporate Governance Principles and Board Matters.”

**Item 14. Principal Accountant Fees and Services**

The information required under this item is incorporated by reference to the following sections of our proxy statement for our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders: “Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm” and “Pre-Approval Policies and Procedures.”

PART IV

**Item 15. Exhibits, Financial Statements and Schedules**

(a) List of documents filed as part of this report:

1. Financial Statements (see “Financial Statements and Supplementary Data” at Item 8 and incorporated herein by reference).
2. Financial Statement Schedules (Schedules to the Financial Statements have been omitted because the information required to be set forth therein is not applicable or is shown in the accompanying Financial Statements or notes thereto)
3. Exhibit Index

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**EXHIBIT INDEX**

<b>Exhibit No.</b>	<b>Description of Document</b>
3.1	<a href="#">Second Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of Energoous Corporation (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.1 to Amendment No. 1 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1/A (File No. 333-193522) filed on March 13, 2014)</a>
3.2	<a href="#">Amendment No. 1 to the Second Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of Energoous Corporation (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.2 to the Registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on May 14, 2014)</a>
3.3	<a href="#">Amended and Restated Bylaws of Energoous Corporation (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.1 to Amendment No. 1 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1/A (File No. 333-193522) filed on March 13, 2014)</a>
4.1	<a href="#">Specimen Certificate representing shares of common stock of Energoous Corporation (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to Amendment No. 2 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1/A (File No. 333-193522) filed on March 21, 2014)</a>
4.2	<a href="#">Amended and Restated Warrant issued to MDB Capital Group, LLC (ARW-1) dated December 13, 2013 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.12 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193522) filed on January 24, 2014)</a>
4.3	<a href="#">Amended and Restated Warrant issued to MDB Capital Group, LLC (ARW-2) dated December 13, 2013 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.13 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193522) filed on January 24, 2014)</a>
4.4	<a href="#">Form of Underwriter's Warrant (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.2 to Amendment No. 2 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1/A (File No. 333-193522) filed on March 21, 2014)</a>
4.5	<a href="#">Form of Amendment to Warrant to Purchase Common Stock Dated June 25, 2014 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on August 13, 2014)</a>
10.1	<a href="#">Executive Employment Agreement between the Company and Michael Leabman dated October 1, 2013 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.9 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193522) filed on January 24, 2014)*</a>
10.2	<a href="#">Form of Indemnification Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.10 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193522) filed on January 24, 2014)*</a>
10.3	<a href="#">Energoous Corporation 2013 Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.16 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193522) filed on January 24, 2014)*</a>
10.4	<a href="#">Form of stock option award under 2013 Omnibus Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.17 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193522) filed on January 24, 2014)*</a>
10.5	<a href="#">Form of Non-Statutory Option Award (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.19 to Amendment No. 1 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1/A (File No. 333-193522) filed on March 13, 2014)*</a>
10.6	<a href="#">First Amendment to Energoous Corporation 2013 Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.20 to Amendment No. 1 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1/A (File No. 333-193522) filed on March 13, 2014)*</a>
10.7	<a href="#">2014 Non-Employee Equity Compensation Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.21 to Amendment No. 1 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1/A (File No. 333-193522) filed on March 13, 2014)*</a>

---

## Table of Contents

### Index to Financial Statements

<u>Exhibit No.</u>	<u>Description of Document</u>
10.8	<a href="#"><u>Form of stock option award under 2014 Non-Employee Equity Compensation Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.22 to Amendment No. 2 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1/A (File No. 333-193522) filed on March 21, 2014)*</u></a>
10.9	<a href="#"><u>Offer Letter effective as of July 14, 2014 between Energos Corporation and Cesar Johnston (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on November 10, 2014)*</u></a>
10.10	<a href="#"><u>Consulting Agreement effective as of July 14, 2014 between Energos Corporation and Howard Yeaton (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to the Registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on November 10, 2014)*</u></a>
10.11	<a href="#"><u>Form of Restricted Stock Unit Award Agreement effective as of August 14, 2014 between Energos Corporation and Cesar Johnston (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to the Registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on November 10, 2014)*</u></a>
10.12	<a href="#"><u>Lease Agreement dated as of September 10, 2014 between the Company and Balzer Family Investments, L.P. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on September 16, 2014)</u></a>
10.13	<a href="#"><u>Form of Restricted Stock Unit Award Agreement under 2013 Omnibus Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.21 to the Registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on March 30, 2015)*</u></a>
10.14	<a href="#"><u>Form of Inducement Restricted Stock Unit Award Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.22 to the Registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on March 30, 2015)*</u></a>
10.15	<a href="#"><u>Amended and Restated Executive Employment Agreement dated as of April 3, 2015 between the Company and Stephen R. Rizzone (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on April 9, 2015)*</u></a>
10.16	<a href="#"><u>Energos Corporation Employee Stock Purchase Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on May 22, 2015)*</u></a>
10.17	<a href="#"><u>Energos Corporation 2015 Performance Unit Share Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on May 22, 2015)*</u></a>
10.18	<a href="#"><u>Amendment No. 1 to Energos Corporation 2015 Performance Unit Share Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on May 22, 2015)*</u></a>
10.19	<a href="#"><u>Energos Corporation Director Compensation Policy (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4 to the Registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on August 13, 2015)</u></a>
10.20	<a href="#"><u>Brian Sereda Offer Letter (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on July 14, 2015)*</u></a>
10.21	<a href="#"><u>Non-Employee Director Compensation Policy, dated December 17, 2015 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.21 to Registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on March 15, 2016)</u></a>
10.22	<a href="#"><u>Securities Purchase Agreement between the Company and Ascend Legend Master Fund, Ltd., dated August 9, 2016 ± (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.22 to the Registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on March 16, 2017)</u></a>
10.23	<a href="#"><u>Amendment No. 1 to Securities Purchase Agreement between the Company and Ascend Legend Master Fund, Ltd., dated August 12, 2016 ** (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.22 to the Registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on March 16, 2017)</u></a>
10.24	<a href="#"><u>Strategic Alliance Agreement between the Company and Dialog Semiconductor (UK) Ltd., dated November 6, 2016 ** (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.22 to the Registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on March 16, 2017)</u></a>

---

## Table of Contents

### Index to Financial Statements

<b>Exhibit No.</b>	<b>Description of Document</b>
10.25	<a href="#"><u>Securities Purchase Agreement between the Company and Dialog Semiconductor (UK) Ltd., dated November 6, 2016 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.22 to the Registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on March 16, 2017)</u></a>
10.26	<a href="#"><u>Securities Purchase Agreement between the Company and Dialog Semiconductor (UK) Ltd., dated June 28, 2017 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on August 9, 2017)</u></a>
10.27	<a href="#"><u>Amended and Restated Warrant to Purchase Common Stock between the Company and Emily T Fairbairn Roth IRA, dated October 6, 2017<sup>±</sup></u></a>
10.28	<a href="#"><u>Amended and Restated Warrant to Purchase Common Stock between the Company and Malcom P Fairbairn Roth IRA, dated October 6, 2017<sup>±</sup></u></a>
10.29	<a href="#"><u>Energous Corporation 2017 Equity Inducement Plan<sup>*±</sup></u></a>
10.30	<a href="#"><u>Offer Letter effective as of October 9, 2014 between Energous Corporation and Neeraj Sahejpal<sup>±</sup></u></a>
10.31	<a href="#"><u>Form of Severance and Change in Control Agreement<sup>*±</sup></u></a>
10.32	<a href="#"><u>Energous Corporation MBO Plan<sup>*±</sup></u></a>
10.33	<a href="#"><u>Non-Employee Director Compensation Policy, as amended December 28, 2018<sup>±</sup></u></a>
21.1	<a href="#"><u>Subsidiaries of the Registrant <sup>±</sup></u></a>
23.1	<a href="#"><u>Consent of Marcum LLP <sup>±</sup></u></a>
24.1	<a href="#"><u>Power of Attorney (included on signature page) <sup>±</sup></u></a>
31.1	<a href="#"><u>Certification Pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a) or Rule 15d-14(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 <sup>±</sup></u></a>
31.2	<a href="#"><u>Certification Pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a) or Rule 15d-14(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 <sup>±</sup></u></a>
32.1	<a href="#"><u>Certification Pursuant to 18 U.S.C Section 1350, as Adopted Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 <sup>±</sup></u></a>
101.INS	XBRL Instance Document <sup>+</sup>
101.SCH	XBRL Taxonomy Schema <sup>+</sup>
101.CAL	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Linkbase <sup>+</sup>
101.DEF	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition Linkbase <sup>+</sup>
101.LAB	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Label Linkbase <sup>+</sup>
101.PRE	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase <sup>+</sup>

\* Indicates a management contract or any compensatory plan, contract or arrangement.

+ Filed herewith.

\*\* Registrant has omitted portions of the referenced exhibit and submitted such exhibit separately with a request for confidential treatment under Rule 24b-2 promulgated under the Exchange Act.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

[Index to Financial Statements](#)

**SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized.

Energous Corporation

Dated: March 16, 2018

By: /s/ Stephen R. Rizzone  
Stephen R. Rizzone  
President, Chief Executive Officer (Principal Executive Officer) and Director

Dated: March 16, 2018

By: /s/ Brian Sereda  
Brian Sereda  
Vice President and Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer)

**POWER OF ATTORNEY**

**KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS**, that the undersigned officers and directors of Energous Corporation, a Delaware corporation, do hereby constitute and appoint Stephen R. Rizzone and Brian Sereda, or each of them individually, the lawful attorneys-in-fact and agents with full power and authority to do any and all acts and things and to execute any and all instruments which said attorneys and agents, and any one of them, determine may be necessary or advisable or required to enable said corporation to comply with the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and any rules or regulations or requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission in connection with this Registration Statement. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing power and authority, the powers granted include the power and authority to sign the names of the undersigned officers and directors in the capacities indicated below to this Registration Statement, to any and all amendments, both pre-effective and post-effective, and supplements to this Registration Statement, and to any and all instruments or documents filed as part of or in conjunction with this Registration Statement or amendments or supplements thereof, and each of the undersigned hereby ratifies and confirms that all said attorneys and agents, or any one of them, shall do or cause to be done by virtue hereof.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the registrant and in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>Signatures</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
<u>/s/ Stephen R. Rizzone</u> Stephen R. Rizzone	President, Chief Executive Officer and Director	March 16, 2018
<u>/s/ Michael Leabman</u> Michael Leabman	Director	March 16, 2018
<u>/s/ John R. Gaulding</u> John R. Gaulding	Director and Chairman	March 16, 2018
<u>/s/ Martin Cooper</u> Martin Cooper	Director	March 16, 2018
<u>/s/ Robert J. Griffin</u> Robert J. Griffin	Director	March 16, 2018
<u>/s/ Rex S. Jackson</u> Rex S. Jackson	Director	March 16, 2018

NEITHER THESE SECURITIES NOR THE SECURITIES FOR WHICH THESE SECURITIES ARE EXERCISABLE HAVE BEEN REGISTERED WITH THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION OR THE SECURITIES COMMISSION OF ANY STATE IN RELIANCE UPON AN EXEMPTION FROM REGISTRATION UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED (THE "SECURITIES ACT"), AND, ACCORDINGLY, MAY NOT BE OFFERED OR SOLD EXCEPT PURSUANT TO AN EFFECTIVE REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OR PURSUANT TO AN AVAILABLE EXEMPTION FROM, OR IN A TRANSACTION NOT SUBJECT TO, THE REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS OF THE SECURITIES ACT AND IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE STATE SECURITIES LAWS. THESE SECURITIES AND THE SECURITIES ISSUABLE UPON EXERCISE OF THESE SECURITIES MAY BE PLEDGED IN CONNECTION WITH A BONA FIDE MARGIN ACCOUNT OR OTHER LOAN SECURED BY SUCH SECURITIES IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE PURCHASE AGREEMENT (AS DEFINED BELOW).

ENERGOUS CORPORATION

WARRANT

Warrant No. CW3

Dated: October 6, 2017

Energous Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the "**Company**"), hereby certifies that, for value received, The Kingdom Trust Company, Custodian, FBO Emily T Fairbairn Roth IRA (7465812820), an exempted company formed under the laws of the Cayman Islands, or its successors or assigns (the "**Holder**"), is entitled to purchase from the Company up to a total of 809,062 shares of common stock, \$.00001 par value per share (the "**Common Stock**"), of the Company (each such share, a "**Warrant Share**" and all such shares, the "**Warrant Shares**") at an exercise price initially equal to \$23.00 per share (as adjusted from time to time as provided in Section 8, the "**Exercise Price**"), at any time on or after date which is six months and one day after the date hereof (the "**Initial Exercise Date**") and through and including the date that is five (5) years after the date hereof (the "**Expiration Date**"), and subject to the following terms and conditions. This Warrant (this "**Warrant**") is issued pursuant to that certain Securities Purchase Agreement, dated as of the date hereof, by and among the Company and the Investor named therein (as amended from time to time, the "**Purchase Agreement**").

1. Definitions. In addition to the terms defined elsewhere in this Warrant, capitalized terms that are not otherwise defined herein have the meanings given to such terms in the Purchase Agreement.

2. Registration of Warrant. The Company shall register this Warrant, upon records to be maintained by the Company for that purpose (the "**Warrant Register**"), in the name of the Holder of record hereof. The Company may deem and treat the registered Holder of this Warrant as the absolute owner hereof for the purpose of any exercise hereof or any distribution to the Holder, and for all other purposes, absent actual notice to the contrary. The Warrant Shares shall be afforded the registration rights set forth in Article VI of the Purchase Agreement.

---

3. Exercise and Duration of Warrant.

(a) This Warrant shall be exercisable by the Holder at any time and from time to time on or after the Initial Exercise Date to and including the Expiration Date. At 6:30 P.M., New York City time on the Expiration Date, the portion of this Warrant not exercised prior thereto shall be and become void and of no value.

(b) The Holder may exercise this Warrant by delivering to the Company (i) an exercise notice, in the form attached hereto (the “**Exercise Notice**”), appropriately completed and duly signed, and (ii) payment of the Exercise Price in a form specified in Section 3(c) hereof for the number of Warrant Shares as to which this Warrant is being exercised, or, if applicable, an election to net exercise this Warrant as provided in Section 3(d) hereof for the number Warrant Shares to be acquired in connection with such exercise, and the date such items are delivered to the Company (as determined in accordance with the notice provisions hereof) is an “**Exercise Date**.” The Holder shall be required to deliver the original Warrant in order to effect an exercise hereunder unless the Holder shall deliver an affidavit of loss or such other documentation reasonably requested by the Company in lieu of such original Warrant in connection with any such exercise. Execution and delivery of the Exercise Notice in respect of less than all the Warrant Shares issuable upon exercise of this Warrant shall have the same effect as cancellation of the original Warrant and issuance of a new warrant to purchase Common Stock, in substantially the form of this Warrant (any such new warrant, a “**New Warrant**”), evidencing the right to purchase the remaining number of Warrant Shares.

(c) Payment for the Warrant Shares upon exercise may be made by (i) a check payable to the Company’s order, (ii) wire transfer of funds to the Company, (iii) by net exercise as provided in Section 3(d) hereof, or (iv) any combination of the foregoing.

(d) Net Exercise Election. Holder may elect to convert all or any portion of this Warrant, without the payment by Holder of any additional consideration, by the surrender of this Warrant to the Company, with the Exercise Notice, duly executed by Holder, into up to the number of shares of Warrant Shares that is obtained under the following formula:

$$X = \frac{Y (A-B)}{A}$$

where X = the number of shares of Warrant Shares to be issued to Holder pursuant to a net exercise of this Warrant effected pursuant to this Section 3(d).

Y = the number of Warrant Shares as to which this Warrant is then being net exercised.

A = the fair market value of one share of Warrant Shares, determined at the time of such net exercise as set forth in the last paragraph of this Section 3(d).

B = the Exercise Price.

The Company will promptly respond in writing to an inquiry by Holder as to the then current fair market value of one share of Warrant Stock.

---

For purposes of the above calculation, fair market value of one share of Warrant Shares shall be determined by the Company's Board of Directors in good faith; *provided, however*, that if on the relevant exercise date for which such value must be determined, a public market for the Company's Common Stock exists, then the fair market value per share of the Warrant Shares shall be (A) the average of the closing bid and asked prices of the Common Stock quoted in the Over-The-Counter Market Summary or (B) the last reported sale price of the Common Stock or the closing price quoted on the exchange on which the Common Stock is listed, whichever is applicable, as published in the Western Edition of *The Wall Street Journal* for the five (5) trading days prior to the date as of which the value of the fair market value is to be determined.

(e) Holder's Exercise Limitations. The Company shall not effect any exercise of this Warrant, and a Holder shall not have the right to exercise any portion of this Warrant, pursuant to Section 3 or otherwise, to the extent that after giving effect to such issuance after exercise as set forth on the applicable Exercise Notice, the Holder (together with the Holder's Affiliates, and any other Persons acting as a group together with the Holder or any of the Holder's Affiliates (such Persons, "**Attribution Parties**")), would beneficially own in excess of the Beneficial Ownership Limitation (as defined below). For purposes of the foregoing sentence, the number of shares of Common Stock beneficially owned by the Holder and its Affiliates and Attribution Parties shall include the number of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of this Warrant with respect to which such determination is being made, but shall exclude the number of shares of Common Stock which would be issuable upon (i) exercise of the remaining, nonexercised portion of this Warrant beneficially owned by the Holder or any of its Affiliates or Attribution Parties and (ii) exercise or conversion of the unexercised or nonconverted portion of any other securities of the Company subject to a limitation on conversion or exercise analogous to the limitation contained herein beneficially owned by the Holder or any of its Affiliates or Attribution Parties. Except as set forth in the preceding sentence, for purposes of this Section 3(e), beneficial ownership shall be calculated in accordance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act, it being acknowledged by the Holder that the Company is not representing to the Holder that such calculation is in compliance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act, and the Holder is solely responsible for any schedules required to be filed in accordance therewith. To the extent that the limitation contained in this Section 3(e) applies, the determination of whether this Warrant is exercisable (in relation to other securities owned by the Holder together with any Affiliates and Attribution Parties) and of which portion of this Warrant is exercisable shall be in the sole discretion of the Holder, and the submission of an Exercise Notice shall be deemed to be the Holder's determination of whether this Warrant is exercisable (in relation to other securities owned by the Holder together with any Affiliates and Attribution Parties) and of which portion of this Warrant is exercisable, in each case subject to the Beneficial Ownership Limitation, and the Company shall have no obligation to verify or confirm the accuracy of such determination. In addition, a determination as to any group status as contemplated above shall be determined in accordance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder. For purposes of this Section 3(e), in determining the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock, a Holder may rely on the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock as reflected in (A) the Company's most recent periodic or annual report filed with the Commission, as the case may be, (B) a more recent public announcement by the Company or (C) a more recent written notice by the Company or the Transfer Agent setting forth the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding. Upon the written or oral request of a Holder, the Company shall within two Trading Days confirm orally and in writing to the Holder the number of shares of

---

Common Stock then outstanding. In any case, the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock shall be determined after giving effect to the conversion or exercise of securities of the Company, including this Warrant, by the Holder or its Affiliates or Attribution Parties since the date as of which such number of outstanding shares of Common Stock was reported. The “**Beneficial Ownership Limitation**” shall be 9.90% of the number of shares of the Common Stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to the issuance of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of this Warrant. The provisions of this paragraph shall be construed and implemented in a manner otherwise than in strict conformity with the terms of this Section 3(e) to correct this paragraph (or any portion hereof) which may be defective or inconsistent with the intended Beneficial Ownership Limitation herein contained or to make changes or supplements necessary or desirable to properly give effect to such limitation. The limitations contained in this paragraph shall apply to a successor holder of this Warrant.

#### 4. Delivery of Warrant Shares.

(a) Upon exercise of this Warrant, the Company shall promptly issue or cause to be issued and cause to be delivered to or upon the written order of the Holder and in such name or names as the Holder may designate, a certificate for the Warrant Shares issuable upon such exercise (i) free of restrictive legends if sold under a registration statement covering the resale of the Warrant Shares and naming the Holder as a selling stockholder, or (ii) if such shares are not freely transferable without volume restrictions pursuant to Rule 144 under the Securities Act, such certificate will bear the legends set forth in Section 4.1(b) of the Purchase Agreement. The Holder, or any Person so designated by the Holder to receive Warrant Shares, shall be deemed to have become the holder of record of such Warrant Shares as of the Exercise Date. The Company shall, upon request of the Holder, use best efforts to deliver, or to cause its transfer agent to deliver, Warrant Shares hereunder electronically through The Depository Trust Company or another established clearing corporation performing similar functions.

(b) This Warrant is exercisable, either in its entirety or, from time to time, for a portion of the number of Warrant Shares. Upon surrender of this Warrant following one or more partial exercises, the Company shall issue or cause to be issued, at its expense, a New Warrant evidencing the right to purchase the remaining number of Warrant Shares.

(c) The Company’s obligations to issue and deliver Warrant Shares in accordance with the terms hereof are absolute and unconditional, irrespective of any action or inaction by the Holder to enforce the same, any waiver or consent with respect to any provision hereof, the recovery of any judgment against any Person or any action to enforce the same, or any setoff, counterclaim, recoupment, limitation or termination, or any breach or alleged breach by the Holder or any other Person of any obligation to the Company or any violation or alleged violation of law by the Holder or any other Person, and irrespective of any other circumstance which might otherwise limit such obligation of the Company to the Holder in connection with the issuance of Warrant Shares. Nothing herein shall limit the Holder’s right to pursue any other remedies available to it hereunder, at law or in equity including, without limitation, a decree of specific performance and/or injunctive relief with respect to the Company’s failure to timely deliver certificates representing shares of Common Stock upon exercise of this Warrant as required pursuant to the terms hereof.

---

5. Charges, Taxes and Expenses. Issuance and delivery of certificates for shares of Common Stock upon exercise of this Warrant shall be made without charge to the Holder for any issue or transfer tax, withholding tax, transfer agent fee or other incidental tax or expense in respect of the issuance of such certificates, all of which taxes and expenses shall be paid by the Company; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to pay any tax which may be payable in respect of any transfer involved in the issuance, delivery or registration of any certificates for Warrant Shares or Warrant in a name other than that of the Holder. The Holder shall be responsible for all other tax liability that may arise as a result of holding or transferring this Warrant or receiving Warrant Shares upon exercise hereof.

6. Replacement of Warrant. If this Warrant is mutilated, lost, stolen or destroyed, the Company, at no cost to Holder, shall issue or cause to be issued in exchange and substitution for and upon cancellation hereof, or in lieu of and substitution for this Warrant, a New Warrant, but only upon receipt of an affidavit of such loss, theft or destruction and customary indemnity, if requested.

7. Reservation of Warrant Shares. The Company covenants that it will at all times reserve and keep available out of the aggregate of its authorized but unissued and otherwise unreserved Common Stock, solely for the purpose of enabling it to issue Warrant Shares upon exercise of this Warrant as herein provided, the number of Warrant Shares which are then issuable and deliverable upon the exercise of this entire Warrant, free from preemptive rights or any other contingent purchase rights of persons other than the Holder (after giving effect to the adjustments and restrictions of Section 8, if any). The Company covenants that all Warrant Shares so issuable and deliverable shall, upon issuance and the payment of the applicable Exercise Price in accordance with the terms hereof, be duly and validly authorized, issued and fully paid and nonassessable. The Company will use reasonable commercial efforts to take all such action to assure that such shares of Common Stock may be issued as provided herein without violation of any applicable law or regulation, or of any requirements of any securities exchange or automated quotation system upon which the Common Stock may be listed, in each case, applicable to the Company.

8. Certain Adjustments. The Exercise Price and number of Warrant Shares issuable upon exercise of this Warrant are subject to adjustment from time to time as set forth in this Section 8.

(a) Stock Dividends, Splits and Combinations. If the Company, at any time while this Warrant is outstanding, (i) pays a stock dividend on its Common Stock or otherwise makes a distribution on its Common Stock that is payable in shares of Common Stock, (ii) subdivides outstanding shares of Common Stock into a larger number of shares, or (iii) combines outstanding shares of Common Stock into a smaller number of shares, then in each such case the Exercise Price shall be multiplied by a fraction of which the numerator shall be the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately before such event and of which the denominator shall be the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately after such event. Any adjustment made pursuant to clause (i) of this paragraph shall become effective immediately after the record date for the determination of stockholders entitled to receive such dividend or distribution, and any adjustment pursuant to clause (ii) or (iii) of this paragraph shall become effective immediately after the effective date of such dividend, distribution, subdivision or combination.

---

(b) Fundamental Transactions. If any capital reorganization, reclassification of the capital stock of the Company, consolidation or merger of the Company with another corporation, or sale, transfer or other disposition of all or substantially all of the Company's assets to another corporation shall be effected (all such transactions being hereinafter referred to as a "**Fundamental Transaction**"), then the Company shall ensure that lawful and adequate provision shall be made whereby the Holder shall thereafter have the right to purchase and receive upon the basis and upon the terms and conditions herein specified and in lieu of the Warrant Shares immediately theretofore issuable upon exercise of this Warrant, such shares of stock, securities or assets as would have been issuable or payable with respect to or in exchange for a number of Warrant Shares equal to the number of Warrant Shares immediately theretofore issuable upon exercise of this Warrant (without regard or giving effect to any limitation in Section 3(e) on the exercise of this Warrant), had such reorganization, reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale, transfer or other disposition not taken place, and in any such case appropriate provision shall be made with respect to the rights and interests of the Holder to the end that the provisions hereof (including, without limitation, provision for adjustment of the Exercise Price) shall thereafter be applicable, as nearly equivalent as may be practicable in relation to any share of stock, securities or assets thereafter deliverable upon the exercise thereof (without regard or giving effect to any limitation in Section 3(e) on the exercise of this Warrant). The Company shall not effect any such consolidation, merger, sale, transfer or other disposition unless prior to or simultaneously with the consummation thereof the successor corporation (if other than the Company) resulting from such consolidation or merger, or the corporation purchasing or otherwise acquiring such assets or other appropriate corporation or entity shall assume the obligation to deliver to the Holder, at the last address of the Holder appearing on the books of the Company, such shares of stock, securities or assets as, in accordance with the foregoing provisions, the Holder may be entitled to purchase, and the other obligations under this Warrant. The provisions of this Section 8(b) shall similarly apply to successive reorganizations, reclassifications, consolidations, mergers, sales, transfers or other dispositions, each of which transactions shall also constitute a Fundamental Transaction.

(c) Number of Warrant Shares. Simultaneously with any adjustment to the Exercise Price pursuant to this Section 8, the number of Warrant Shares that may be purchased upon exercise of this Warrant shall be increased or decreased (as the case may be), proportionately, so that after such adjustment the aggregate Exercise Price payable hereunder for the decreased or increased (as the case may be) number of Warrant Shares shall be the same as the aggregate Exercise Price in effect immediately prior to such adjustment.

(d) Calculations. All calculations under this Section 8 shall be made to the nearest cent or the nearest 1/100th of a share, as applicable. The number of shares of Common Stock outstanding at any given time shall not include shares owned or held by or for the account of the Company, and the disposition of any such shares shall be considered an issue or sale of Common Stock.

(e) Notice of Adjustments. Upon the occurrence of each adjustment pursuant to this Section 8, the Company at its expense will promptly compute such adjustment in

---

accordance with the terms of this Warrant and prepare a certificate setting forth such adjustment, including a statement of the adjusted Exercise Price and adjusted number or type of Warrant Shares or other securities issuable upon exercise of this Warrant (as applicable), describing the transactions giving rise to such adjustments and showing in detail the facts upon which such adjustment is based. Upon any such occurrence and/or otherwise upon written request by or on behalf of the Holder, the Company will promptly deliver a copy of each such certificate to the Holder and to the Transfer Agent.

(f) Notice of Corporate Events. If the Company (i) declares a dividend or any other distribution of cash, securities or other property in respect of its Common Stock, including without limitation any granting of rights or warrants to subscribe for or purchase any capital stock of the Company, (ii) enters into any agreement contemplating, or solicits stockholder approval for, any Fundamental Transaction or Change of Control or (iii) authorizes the voluntary dissolution, liquidation or winding up of the affairs of the Company, then the Company shall deliver to the Holder a notice describing the material terms and conditions of such transaction, at least fifteen calendar days prior to the applicable record or effective date on which a Person would need to hold Common Stock in order to participate in or vote with respect to such transaction, and the Company will take all steps reasonably necessary to facilitate the exercise of the Warrant pursuant to Section 3(b) (which exercise may be conditioned upon the occurrence of such event); provided, however, that the failure to deliver such notice or any defect therein shall not affect the validity of the corporate action required to be described in such notice.

9. Fractional Shares. The Company shall not be required to issue or cause to be issued fractional Warrant Shares on the exercise of this Warrant. If any fraction of a Warrant Share would, except for the provisions of this Section 9, be issuable upon exercise of this Warrant, then the number of Warrant Shares to be issued will be rounded down to the nearest whole share.

10. Notices. Any and all notices or other communications or deliveries hereunder (including without limitation any Exercise Notice) shall be in writing and shall be deemed given and effective on the earliest of (i) the date of transmission, if such notice or communication is delivered via facsimile at the facsimile number specified in the Purchase Agreement prior to 6:30 p.m. (New York City time) on a Trading Day, (ii) the next Trading Day after the date of transmission, if such notice or communication is delivered via facsimile at the facsimile number specified in the Purchase Agreement on a day that is not a Trading Day or later than 6:30 p.m. (New York City time) on any Trading Day, (iii) the Trading Day following the date of delivery to the courier service, if sent by nationally recognized overnight courier service, or (iv) upon actual receipt by the party to whom such notice is required to be given. The address for such notices or communications shall be as set forth in the Purchase Agreement.

11. Warrant Agent. The Company shall serve as warrant agent under this Warrant. Upon thirty (30) days' notice to the Holder, the Company may appoint a new warrant agent. Any corporation into which the Company or any new warrant agent may be merged or any corporation resulting from any consolidation to which the Company or any new warrant agent shall be a party or any corporation to which the Company or any new warrant agent transfers substantially all of its corporate trust or stockholder services business shall be a successor warrant agent under this Warrant without any further act. Any such successor warrant agent shall promptly cause notice of its succession as warrant agent to be mailed (by first class mail, postage prepaid) to the Holder at the Holder's last address as shown on the Warrant Register.

---

12. Miscellaneous.

(a) The Company shall not, by amendment of its Certificate of Incorporation or Bylaws, or through any reorganization, transfer of assets, consolidation, merger, scheme of arrangement, dissolution, issue or sale of securities or any other voluntary action, avoid or seek to avoid the observance or performance of any of the terms of this Warrant, and will at all times in good faith carry out all the provisions of this Warrant. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, the Company (i) will not increase the par value of any Warrant Shares above the amount payable therefor on such exercise and (ii) will not, and will not permit its transfer agent to, close its stockholder books or records in any manner which interferes with the timely exercise of this Warrant.

(b) ~~GOVERNING LAW; VENUE; SERVICE OF PROCESS; WAIVER OF JURY TRIAL.~~ ALL QUESTIONS CONCERNING THE CONSTRUCTION, VALIDITY, ENFORCEMENT AND INTERPRETATION OF THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE GOVERNED BY AND CONSTRUED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK, WITHOUT GIVING EFFECT TO THAT BODY OF LAWS PERTAINING TO CONFLICT OF LAWS. EACH PARTY HEREBY IRREVOCABLY SUBMITS TO THE NON-EXCLUSIVE JURISDICTION OF THE STATE AND FEDERAL COURTS SITTING IN THE CITY OF NEW YORK, BOROUGH OF MANHATTAN, FOR THE ADJUDICATION OF ANY DISPUTE HEREUNDER OR IN CONNECTION HEREWITH OR WITH ANY TRANSACTION CONTEMPLATED HEREBY OR DISCUSSED HEREIN (INCLUDING WITH RESPECT TO THE ENFORCEMENT OF ANY OF THE TRANSACTION DOCUMENTS), AND HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES, AND AGREES NOT TO ASSERT IN ANY SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING, ANY CLAIM THAT IT IS NOT PERSONALLY SUBJECT TO THE JURISDICTION OF ANY SUCH COURT AND THAT SUCH SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING IS IMPROPER. EACH PARTY HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES PERSONAL SERVICE OF PROCESS AND CONSENTS TO PROCESS BEING SERVED IN ANY SUCH SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING BY MAILING A COPY THEREOF VIA REGISTERED OR CERTIFIED MAIL OR OVERNIGHT DELIVERY (WITH EVIDENCE OF DELIVERY) TO SUCH PARTY AT THE ADDRESS IN EFFECT FOR NOTICES TO IT UNDER THIS AGREEMENT AND AGREES THAT SUCH SERVICE SHALL CONSTITUTE GOOD AND SUFFICIENT SERVICE OF PROCESS AND NOTICE THEREOF. NOTHING CONTAINED HEREIN SHALL BE DEEMED TO LIMIT IN ANY WAY ANY RIGHT TO SERVE PROCESS IN ANY MANNER PERMITTED BY LAW. EACH OF THE COMPANY AND THE HOLDER HEREBY WAIVES ALL RIGHTS TO A TRIAL BY JURY.

(c) The headings herein are for convenience only, do not constitute a part of this Warrant and shall not be deemed to limit or affect any of the provisions hereof.

(d) In case any one or more of the provisions of this Warrant shall be invalid or unenforceable in any respect, the validity and enforceability of the remaining terms and provisions of this Warrant shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby and the parties

---

will attempt in good faith to agree upon a valid and enforceable provision which shall be a commercially reasonable substitute therefor, and upon so agreeing, shall incorporate such substitute provision in this Warrant.

(e) No course of dealing or any delay or failure to exercise any right hereunder on the part of the Holder shall operate as a waiver of such right or otherwise prejudice the Holder's rights, powers or remedies, notwithstanding all rights hereunder terminate on the Expiration Date.

(f) No provision hereof, in the absence of any affirmative action by the Holder to exercise this Warrant or purchase Warrant Shares, and no enumeration herein of the rights or privileges of the Holder, shall give rise to any liability of the Holder for the purchase price of any Common Stock or as a stockholder of the Company, whether such liability is asserted by the Company or by creditors of the Company.

(g) The Holder, in addition to being entitled to exercise all rights granted by law, including recovery of damages, will be entitled to specific performance of its rights under this Warrant. The Company agrees that monetary damages would not be adequate compensation for any loss incurred by reason of a breach by it of the provisions of this Warrant and hereby agrees to waive the defense in any action for specific performance that a remedy at law would be adequate.

(h) Any term of this Warrant may be amended and the observance of any term of this Warrant may be waived with the written consent of the Company and the holders of a majority of the outstanding unexercised warrants issued pursuant to the Purchase Agreement.

[SIGNATURE PAGE FOLLOWS]

---

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this Warrant to be duly executed by its authorized officer as of the date first indicated above.

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**

By: /s/ Brian Sereda  
Name: Brian Sereda  
Title: Senior Vice President and Chief Financial Officer

---

FORM OF EXERCISE NOTICE

(To be executed by the Holder to exercise the right to purchase shares of Common Stock under the foregoing Warrant)

To: Energois Corporation

The undersigned is the Holder of Warrant No. CW3 (the "**Warrant**") issued by Energois Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the "**Company**"). Capitalized terms used herein and not otherwise defined herein have the respective meanings set forth in the Warrant.

1. The Warrant is currently exercisable to purchase a total of \_\_\_\_\_ Warrant Shares.
2. The undersigned Holder hereby exercises its right to purchase \_\_\_\_\_ Warrant Shares pursuant to the Warrant.
3. The Holder is hereby paying the sum of \$\_\_\_\_\_ to the Company in cash in accordance with the terms of the Warrant.
4. Pursuant to this exercise, the Company shall deliver to the holder \_\_\_\_\_ Warrant Shares in accordance with the terms of the Warrant.
5. Following this exercise, the Warrant shall be exercisable to purchase a total of \_\_\_\_\_ Warrant Shares.

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Holder:

(Print) \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

(Signature must conform in all respects to name of holder as specified on the face of the Warrant)

NEITHER THESE SECURITIES NOR THE SECURITIES FOR WHICH THESE SECURITIES ARE EXERCISABLE HAVE BEEN REGISTERED WITH THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION OR THE SECURITIES COMMISSION OF ANY STATE IN RELIANCE UPON AN EXEMPTION FROM REGISTRATION UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED (THE "SECURITIES ACT"), AND, ACCORDINGLY, MAY NOT BE OFFERED OR SOLD EXCEPT PURSUANT TO AN EFFECTIVE REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OR PURSUANT TO AN AVAILABLE EXEMPTION FROM, OR IN A TRANSACTION NOT SUBJECT TO, THE REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS OF THE SECURITIES ACT AND IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE STATE SECURITIES LAWS. THESE SECURITIES AND THE SECURITIES ISSUABLE UPON EXERCISE OF THESE SECURITIES MAY BE PLEDGED IN CONNECTION WITH A BONA FIDE MARGIN ACCOUNT OR OTHER LOAN SECURED BY SUCH SECURITIES IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE PURCHASE AGREEMENT (AS DEFINED BELOW).

ENERGOUS CORPORATION

WARRANT

Warrant No. CW4

Dated: October 6, 2017

Energous Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the "**Company**"), hereby certifies that, for value received, the Kingdom Trust Company, Custodian, FBO Malcom P Fairbairn Roth IRA (9510281370), an exempted company formed under the laws of the Cayman Islands, or its successors or assigns (the "**Holder**"), is entitled to purchase from the Company up to a total of 809,061 shares of common stock, \$.00001 par value per share (the "**Common Stock**"), of the Company (each such share, a "**Warrant Share**" and all such shares, the "**Warrant Shares**") at an exercise price initially equal to \$23.00 per share (as adjusted from time to time as provided in Section 8, the "**Exercise Price**"), at any time on or after date which is six months and one day after the date hereof (the "**Initial Exercise Date**") and through and including the date that is five (5) years after the date hereof (the "**Expiration Date**"), and subject to the following terms and conditions. This Warrant (this "**Warrant**") is issued pursuant to that certain Securities Purchase Agreement, dated as of the date hereof, by and among the Company and the Investor named therein (as amended from time to time, the "**Purchase Agreement**").

1. Definitions. In addition to the terms defined elsewhere in this Warrant, capitalized terms that are not otherwise defined herein have the meanings given to such terms in the Purchase Agreement.

2. Registration of Warrant. The Company shall register this Warrant, upon records to be maintained by the Company for that purpose (the "**Warrant Register**"), in the name of the Holder of record hereof. The Company may deem and treat the registered Holder of this Warrant as the absolute owner hereof for the purpose of any exercise hereof or any distribution to the Holder, and for all other purposes, absent actual notice to the contrary. The Warrant Shares shall be afforded the registration rights set forth in Article VI of the Purchase Agreement.

---

### 3. Exercise and Duration of Warrant.

(a) This Warrant shall be exercisable by the Holder at any time and from time to time on or after the Initial Exercise Date to and including the Expiration Date. At 6:30 P.M., New York City time on the Expiration Date, the portion of this Warrant not exercised prior thereto shall be and become void and of no value.

(b) The Holder may exercise this Warrant by delivering to the Company (i) an exercise notice, in the form attached hereto (the “**Exercise Notice**”), appropriately completed and duly signed, and (ii) payment of the Exercise Price in a form specified in Section 3(c) hereof for the number of Warrant Shares as to which this Warrant is being exercised, or, if applicable, an election to net exercise this Warrant as provided in Section 3(d) hereof for the number of Warrant Shares to be acquired in connection with such exercise, and the date such items are delivered to the Company (as determined in accordance with the notice provisions hereof) is an “**Exercise Date**.” The Holder shall be required to deliver the original Warrant in order to effect an exercise hereunder unless the Holder shall deliver an affidavit of loss or such other documentation reasonably requested by the Company in lieu of such original Warrant in connection with any such exercise. Execution and delivery of the Exercise Notice in respect of less than all the Warrant Shares issuable upon exercise of this Warrant shall have the same effect as cancellation of the original Warrant and issuance of a new warrant to purchase Common Stock, in substantially the form of this Warrant (any such new warrant, a “**New Warrant**”), evidencing the right to purchase the remaining number of Warrant Shares.

(c) Payment for the Warrant Shares upon exercise may be made by (i) a check payable to the Company’s order, (ii) wire transfer of funds to the Company, (iii) by net exercise as provided in Section 3(d) hereof, or (iv) any combination of the foregoing.

(d) Net Exercise Election. Holder may elect to convert all or any portion of this Warrant, without the payment by Holder of any additional consideration, by the surrender of this Warrant to the Company, with the Exercise Notice, duly executed by Holder, into up to the number of shares of Warrant Shares that is obtained under the following formula:

$$X = \frac{Y (A-B)}{A}$$

where X = the number of shares of Warrant Shares to be issued to Holder pursuant to a net exercise of this Warrant effected pursuant to this Section 3(d).

Y = the number of Warrant Shares as to which this Warrant is then being net exercised.

A = the fair market value of one share of Warrant Shares, determined at the time of such net exercise as set forth in the last paragraph of this Section 3(d).

B = the Exercise Price.

The Company will promptly respond in writing to an inquiry by Holder as to the then current fair market value of one share of Warrant Stock.

---

For purposes of the above calculation, fair market value of one share of Warrant Shares shall be determined by the Company's Board of Directors in good faith; *provided, however*, that if on the relevant exercise date for which such value must be determined, a public market for the Company's Common Stock exists, then the fair market value per share of the Warrant Shares shall be (A) the average of the closing bid and asked prices of the Common Stock quoted in the Over-The-Counter Market Summary or (B) the last reported sale price of the Common Stock or the closing price quoted on the exchange on which the Common Stock is listed, whichever is applicable, as published in the Western Edition of *The Wall Street Journal* for the five (5) trading days prior to the date as of which the value of the fair market value is to be determined.

(e) Holder's Exercise Limitations. The Company shall not effect any exercise of this Warrant, and a Holder shall not have the right to exercise any portion of this Warrant, pursuant to Section 3 or otherwise, to the extent that after giving effect to such issuance after exercise as set forth on the applicable Exercise Notice, the Holder (together with the Holder's Affiliates, and any other Persons acting as a group together with the Holder or any of the Holder's Affiliates (such Persons, "**Attribution Parties**")), would beneficially own in excess of the Beneficial Ownership Limitation (as defined below). For purposes of the foregoing sentence, the number of shares of Common Stock beneficially owned by the Holder and its Affiliates and Attribution Parties shall include the number of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of this Warrant with respect to which such determination is being made, but shall exclude the number of shares of Common Stock which would be issuable upon (i) exercise of the remaining, nonexercised portion of this Warrant beneficially owned by the Holder or any of its Affiliates or Attribution Parties and (ii) exercise or conversion of the unexercised or nonconverted portion of any other securities of the Company subject to a limitation on conversion or exercise analogous to the limitation contained herein beneficially owned by the Holder or any of its Affiliates or Attribution Parties. Except as set forth in the preceding sentence, for purposes of this Section 3(e), beneficial ownership shall be calculated in accordance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act, it being acknowledged by the Holder that the Company is not representing to the Holder that such calculation is in compliance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act, and the Holder is solely responsible for any schedules required to be filed in accordance therewith. To the extent that the limitation contained in this Section 3(e) applies, the determination of whether this Warrant is exercisable (in relation to other securities owned by the Holder together with any Affiliates and Attribution Parties) and of which portion of this Warrant is exercisable shall be in the sole discretion of the Holder, and the submission of an Exercise Notice shall be deemed to be the Holder's determination of whether this Warrant is exercisable (in relation to other securities owned by the Holder together with any Affiliates and Attribution Parties) and of which portion of this Warrant is exercisable, in each case subject to the Beneficial Ownership Limitation, and the Company shall have no obligation to verify or confirm the accuracy of such determination. In addition, a determination as to any group status as contemplated above shall be determined in accordance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder. For purposes of this Section 3(e), in determining the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock, a Holder may rely on the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock as reflected in (A) the Company's most recent periodic or annual report filed with the Commission, as the case may be, (B) a more recent public announcement by the Company or (C) a more recent written notice by the Company or the Transfer Agent setting forth the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding. Upon the written or oral request of a Holder, the Company shall within two Trading Days confirm orally and in writing to the Holder the number of shares of

---

Common Stock then outstanding. In any case, the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock shall be determined after giving effect to the conversion or exercise of securities of the Company, including this Warrant, by the Holder or its Affiliates or Attribution Parties since the date as of which such number of outstanding shares of Common Stock was reported. The “**Beneficial Ownership Limitation**” shall be 9.90% of the number of shares of the Common Stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to the issuance of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of this Warrant. The provisions of this paragraph shall be construed and implemented in a manner otherwise than in strict conformity with the terms of this Section 3(e) to correct this paragraph (or any portion hereof) which may be defective or inconsistent with the intended Beneficial Ownership Limitation herein contained or to make changes or supplements necessary or desirable to properly give effect to such limitation. The limitations contained in this paragraph shall apply to a successor holder of this Warrant.

#### 4. Delivery of Warrant Shares.

(a) Upon exercise of this Warrant, the Company shall promptly issue or cause to be issued and cause to be delivered to or upon the written order of the Holder and in such name or names as the Holder may designate, a certificate for the Warrant Shares issuable upon such exercise (i) free of restrictive legends if sold under a registration statement covering the resale of the Warrant Shares and naming the Holder as a selling stockholder, or (ii) if such shares are not freely transferable without volume restrictions pursuant to Rule 144 under the Securities Act, such certificate will bear the legends set forth in Section 4.1(b) of the Purchase Agreement. The Holder, or any Person so designated by the Holder to receive Warrant Shares, shall be deemed to have become the holder of record of such Warrant Shares as of the Exercise Date. The Company shall, upon request of the Holder, use best efforts to deliver, or to cause its transfer agent to deliver, Warrant Shares hereunder electronically through The Depository Trust Company or another established clearing corporation performing similar functions.

(b) This Warrant is exercisable, either in its entirety or, from time to time, for a portion of the number of Warrant Shares. Upon surrender of this Warrant following one or more partial exercises, the Company shall issue or cause to be issued, at its expense, a New Warrant evidencing the right to purchase the remaining number of Warrant Shares.

(c) The Company’s obligations to issue and deliver Warrant Shares in accordance with the terms hereof are absolute and unconditional, irrespective of any action or inaction by the Holder to enforce the same, any waiver or consent with respect to any provision hereof, the recovery of any judgment against any Person or any action to enforce the same, or any setoff, counterclaim, recoupment, limitation or termination, or any breach or alleged breach by the Holder or any other Person of any obligation to the Company or any violation or alleged violation of law by the Holder or any other Person, and irrespective of any other circumstance which might otherwise limit such obligation of the Company to the Holder in connection with the issuance of Warrant Shares. Nothing herein shall limit the Holder’s right to pursue any other remedies available to it hereunder, at law or in equity including, without limitation, a decree of specific performance and/or injunctive relief with respect to the Company’s failure to timely deliver certificates representing shares of Common Stock upon exercise of this Warrant as required pursuant to the terms hereof.

---

5. Charges, Taxes and Expenses. Issuance and delivery of certificates for shares of Common Stock upon exercise of this Warrant shall be made without charge to the Holder for any issue or transfer tax, withholding tax, transfer agent fee or other incidental tax or expense in respect of the issuance of such certificates, all of which taxes and expenses shall be paid by the Company; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to pay any tax which may be payable in respect of any transfer involved in the issuance, delivery or registration of any certificates for Warrant Shares or Warrant in a name other than that of the Holder. The Holder shall be responsible for all other tax liability that may arise as a result of holding or transferring this Warrant or receiving Warrant Shares upon exercise hereof.

6. Replacement of Warrant. If this Warrant is mutilated, lost, stolen or destroyed, the Company, at no cost to Holder, shall issue or cause to be issued in exchange and substitution for and upon cancellation hereof, or in lieu of and substitution for this Warrant, a New Warrant, but only upon receipt of an affidavit of such loss, theft or destruction and customary indemnity, if requested.

7. Reservation of Warrant Shares. The Company covenants that it will at all times reserve and keep available out of the aggregate of its authorized but unissued and otherwise unreserved Common Stock, solely for the purpose of enabling it to issue Warrant Shares upon exercise of this Warrant as herein provided, the number of Warrant Shares which are then issuable and deliverable upon the exercise of this entire Warrant, free from preemptive rights or any other contingent purchase rights of persons other than the Holder (after giving effect to the adjustments and restrictions of Section 8, if any). The Company covenants that all Warrant Shares so issuable and deliverable shall, upon issuance and the payment of the applicable Exercise Price in accordance with the terms hereof, be duly and validly authorized, issued and fully paid and nonassessable. The Company will use reasonable commercial efforts to take all such action to assure that such shares of Common Stock may be issued as provided herein without violation of any applicable law or regulation, or of any requirements of any securities exchange or automated quotation system upon which the Common Stock may be listed, in each case, applicable to the Company.

8. Certain Adjustments. The Exercise Price and number of Warrant Shares issuable upon exercise of this Warrant are subject to adjustment from time to time as set forth in this Section 8.

(a) Stock Dividends, Splits and Combinations. If the Company, at any time while this Warrant is outstanding, (i) pays a stock dividend on its Common Stock or otherwise makes a distribution on its Common Stock that is payable in shares of Common Stock, (ii) subdivides outstanding shares of Common Stock into a larger number of shares, or (iii) combines outstanding shares of Common Stock into a smaller number of shares, then in each such case the Exercise Price shall be multiplied by a fraction of which the numerator shall be the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately before such event and of which the denominator shall be the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately after such event. Any adjustment made pursuant to clause (i) of this paragraph shall become effective immediately after the record date for the determination of stockholders entitled to receive such dividend or distribution, and any adjustment pursuant to clause (ii) or (iii) of this paragraph shall become effective immediately after the effective date of such dividend, distribution, subdivision or combination.

---

(b) Fundamental Transactions. If any capital reorganization, reclassification of the capital stock of the Company, consolidation or merger of the Company with another corporation, or sale, transfer or other disposition of all or substantially all of the Company's assets to another corporation shall be effected (all such transactions being hereinafter referred to as a "**Fundamental Transaction**"), then the Company shall ensure that lawful and adequate provision shall be made whereby the Holder shall thereafter have the right to purchase and receive upon the basis and upon the terms and conditions herein specified and in lieu of the Warrant Shares immediately theretofore issuable upon exercise of this Warrant, such shares of stock, securities or assets as would have been issuable or payable with respect to or in exchange for a number of Warrant Shares equal to the number of Warrant Shares immediately theretofore issuable upon exercise of this Warrant (without regard or giving effect to any limitation in Section 3(e) on the exercise of this Warrant), had such reorganization, reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale, transfer or other disposition not taken place, and in any such case appropriate provision shall be made with respect to the rights and interests of the Holder to the end that the provisions hereof (including, without limitation, provision for adjustment of the Exercise Price) shall thereafter be applicable, as nearly equivalent as may be practicable in relation to any share of stock, securities or assets thereafter deliverable upon the exercise thereof (without regard or giving effect to any limitation in Section 3(e) on the exercise of this Warrant). The Company shall not effect any such consolidation, merger, sale, transfer or other disposition unless prior to or simultaneously with the consummation thereof the successor corporation (if other than the Company) resulting from such consolidation or merger, or the corporation purchasing or otherwise acquiring such assets or other appropriate corporation or entity shall assume the obligation to deliver to the Holder, at the last address of the Holder appearing on the books of the Company, such shares of stock, securities or assets as, in accordance with the foregoing provisions, the Holder may be entitled to purchase, and the other obligations under this Warrant. The provisions of this Section 8(b) shall similarly apply to successive reorganizations, reclassifications, consolidations, mergers, sales, transfers or other dispositions, each of which transactions shall also constitute a Fundamental Transaction.

(c) Number of Warrant Shares. Simultaneously with any adjustment to the Exercise Price pursuant to this Section 8, the number of Warrant Shares that may be purchased upon exercise of this Warrant shall be increased or decreased (as the case may be), proportionately, so that after such adjustment the aggregate Exercise Price payable hereunder for the decreased or increased (as the case may be) number of Warrant Shares shall be the same as the aggregate Exercise Price in effect immediately prior to such adjustment.

(d) Calculations. All calculations under this Section 8 shall be made to the nearest cent or the nearest 1/100th of a share, as applicable. The number of shares of Common Stock outstanding at any given time shall not include shares owned or held by or for the account of the Company, and the disposition of any such shares shall be considered an issue or sale of Common Stock.

(e) Notice of Adjustments. Upon the occurrence of each adjustment pursuant to this Section 8, the Company at its expense will promptly compute such adjustment in

---

accordance with the terms of this Warrant and prepare a certificate setting forth such adjustment, including a statement of the adjusted Exercise Price and adjusted number or type of Warrant Shares or other securities issuable upon exercise of this Warrant (as applicable), describing the transactions giving rise to such adjustments and showing in detail the facts upon which such adjustment is based. Upon any such occurrence and/or otherwise upon written request by or on behalf of the Holder, the Company will promptly deliver a copy of each such certificate to the Holder and to the Transfer Agent.

(f) Notice of Corporate Events. If the Company (i) declares a dividend or any other distribution of cash, securities or other property in respect of its Common Stock, including without limitation any granting of rights or warrants to subscribe for or purchase any capital stock of the Company, (ii) enters into any agreement contemplating, or solicits stockholder approval for, any Fundamental Transaction or Change of Control or (iii) authorizes the voluntary dissolution, liquidation or winding up of the affairs of the Company, then the Company shall deliver to the Holder a notice describing the material terms and conditions of such transaction, at least fifteen calendar days prior to the applicable record or effective date on which a Person would need to hold Common Stock in order to participate in or vote with respect to such transaction, and the Company will take all steps reasonably necessary to facilitate the exercise of the Warrant pursuant to Section 3(b) (which exercise may be conditioned upon the occurrence of such event); provided, however, that the failure to deliver such notice or any defect therein shall not affect the validity of the corporate action required to be described in such notice.

9. Fractional Shares. The Company shall not be required to issue or cause to be issued fractional Warrant Shares on the exercise of this Warrant. If any fraction of a Warrant Share would, except for the provisions of this Section 9, be issuable upon exercise of this Warrant, then the number of Warrant Shares to be issued will be rounded down to the nearest whole share.

10. Notices. Any and all notices or other communications or deliveries hereunder (including without limitation any Exercise Notice) shall be in writing and shall be deemed given and effective on the earliest of (i) the date of transmission, if such notice or communication is delivered via facsimile at the facsimile number specified in the Purchase Agreement prior to 6:30 p.m. (New York City time) on a Trading Day, (ii) the next Trading Day after the date of transmission, if such notice or communication is delivered via facsimile at the facsimile number specified in the Purchase Agreement on a day that is not a Trading Day or later than 6:30 p.m. (New York City time) on any Trading Day, (iii) the Trading Day following the date of delivery to the courier service, if sent by nationally recognized overnight courier service, or (iv) upon actual receipt by the party to whom such notice is required to be given. The address for such notices or communications shall be as set forth in the Purchase Agreement.

11. Warrant Agent. The Company shall serve as warrant agent under this Warrant. Upon thirty (30) days' notice to the Holder, the Company may appoint a new warrant agent. Any corporation into which the Company or any new warrant agent may be merged or any corporation resulting from any consolidation to which the Company or any new warrant agent shall be a party or any corporation to which the Company or any new warrant agent transfers substantially all of its corporate trust or stockholder services business shall be a successor warrant agent under this Warrant without any further act. Any such successor warrant agent shall promptly cause notice of its succession as warrant agent to be mailed (by first class mail, postage prepaid) to the Holder at the Holder's last address as shown on the Warrant Register.

---

12. Miscellaneous.

(a) The Company shall not, by amendment of its Certificate of Incorporation or Bylaws, or through any reorganization, transfer of assets, consolidation, merger, scheme of arrangement, dissolution, issue or sale of securities or any other voluntary action, avoid or seek to avoid the observance or performance of any of the terms of this Warrant, and will at all times in good faith carry out all the provisions of this Warrant. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, the Company (i) will not increase the par value of any Warrant Shares above the amount payable therefor on such exercise and (ii) will not, and will not permit its transfer agent to, close its stockholder books or records in any manner which interferes with the timely exercise of this Warrant.

(b) ~~GOVERNING LAW; VENUE; SERVICE OF PROCESS; WAIVER OF JURY TRIAL.~~ ALL QUESTIONS CONCERNING THE CONSTRUCTION, VALIDITY, ENFORCEMENT AND INTERPRETATION OF THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE GOVERNED BY AND CONSTRUED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK, WITHOUT GIVING EFFECT TO THAT BODY OF LAWS PERTAINING TO CONFLICT OF LAWS. EACH PARTY HEREBY IRREVOCABLY SUBMITS TO THE NON-EXCLUSIVE JURISDICTION OF THE STATE AND FEDERAL COURTS SITTING IN THE CITY OF NEW YORK, BOROUGH OF MANHATTAN, FOR THE ADJUDICATION OF ANY DISPUTE HEREUNDER OR IN CONNECTION HEREWITH OR WITH ANY TRANSACTION CONTEMPLATED HEREBY OR DISCUSSED HEREIN (INCLUDING WITH RESPECT TO THE ENFORCEMENT OF ANY OF THE TRANSACTION DOCUMENTS), AND HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES, AND AGREES NOT TO ASSERT IN ANY SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING, ANY CLAIM THAT IT IS NOT PERSONALLY SUBJECT TO THE JURISDICTION OF ANY SUCH COURT AND THAT SUCH SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING IS IMPROPER. EACH PARTY HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES PERSONAL SERVICE OF PROCESS AND CONSENTS TO PROCESS BEING SERVED IN ANY SUCH SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING BY MAILING A COPY THEREOF VIA REGISTERED OR CERTIFIED MAIL OR OVERNIGHT DELIVERY (WITH EVIDENCE OF DELIVERY) TO SUCH PARTY AT THE ADDRESS IN EFFECT FOR NOTICES TO IT UNDER THIS AGREEMENT AND AGREES THAT SUCH SERVICE SHALL CONSTITUTE GOOD AND SUFFICIENT SERVICE OF PROCESS AND NOTICE THEREOF. NOTHING CONTAINED HEREIN SHALL BE DEEMED TO LIMIT IN ANY WAY ANY RIGHT TO SERVE PROCESS IN ANY MANNER PERMITTED BY LAW. EACH OF THE COMPANY AND THE HOLDER HEREBY WAIVES ALL RIGHTS TO A TRIAL BY JURY.

(c) The headings herein are for convenience only, do not constitute a part of this Warrant and shall not be deemed to limit or affect any of the provisions hereof.

(d) In case any one or more of the provisions of this Warrant shall be invalid or unenforceable in any respect, the validity and enforceability of the remaining terms and provisions of this Warrant shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby and the parties

---

will attempt in good faith to agree upon a valid and enforceable provision which shall be a commercially reasonable substitute therefor, and upon so agreeing, shall incorporate such substitute provision in this Warrant.

(e) No course of dealing or any delay or failure to exercise any right hereunder on the part of the Holder shall operate as a waiver of such right or otherwise prejudice the Holder's rights, powers or remedies, notwithstanding all rights hereunder terminate on the Expiration Date.

(f) No provision hereof, in the absence of any affirmative action by the Holder to exercise this Warrant or purchase Warrant Shares, and no enumeration herein of the rights or privileges of the Holder, shall give rise to any liability of the Holder for the purchase price of any Common Stock or as a stockholder of the Company, whether such liability is asserted by the Company or by creditors of the Company.

(g) The Holder, in addition to being entitled to exercise all rights granted by law, including recovery of damages, will be entitled to specific performance of its rights under this Warrant. The Company agrees that monetary damages would not be adequate compensation for any loss incurred by reason of a breach by it of the provisions of this Warrant and hereby agrees to waive the defense in any action for specific performance that a remedy at law would be adequate.

(h) Any term of this Warrant may be amended and the observance of any term of this Warrant may be waived with the written consent of the Company and the holders of a majority of the outstanding unexercised warrants issued pursuant to the Purchase Agreement.

[SIGNATURE PAGE FOLLOWS]

---

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this Warrant to be duly executed by its authorized officer as of the date first indicated above.

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**

By: /s/ Brian Sereda  
Name: Brian Sereda  
Title: Senior Vice President and Chief Financial Officer

---

FORM OF EXERCISE NOTICE

(To be executed by the Holder to exercise the right to purchase shares of Common Stock under the foregoing Warrant)

To: Energois Corporation

The undersigned is the Holder of Warrant No. CW4 (the "**Warrant**") issued by Energois Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the "**Company**"). Capitalized terms used herein and not otherwise defined herein have the respective meanings set forth in the Warrant.

1. The Warrant is currently exercisable to purchase a total of \_\_\_\_\_ Warrant Shares.
2. The undersigned Holder hereby exercises its right to purchase \_\_\_\_\_ Warrant Shares pursuant to the Warrant.
3. The Holder is hereby paying the sum of \$\_\_\_\_ to the Company in cash in accordance with the terms of the Warrant.
4. Pursuant to this exercise, the Company shall deliver to the holder \_\_\_\_\_ Warrant Shares in accordance with the terms of the Warrant.
5. Following this exercise, the Warrant shall be exercisable to purchase a total of \_\_\_\_\_ Warrant Shares.

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_

Name of Holder:

(Print) \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

(Signature must conform in all respects to name of holder as specified on the face of the Warrant)

## ENERGOUS CORPORATION

## 2017 Equity Inducement Plan

**1. PURPOSE.** The purpose of this Plan is to provide incentives to attract, retain and motivate eligible persons whose potential contributions are important to the success of the Company, and any Parents and Subsidiaries that exist now or in the future, by offering them an opportunity to participate in the Company's future performance through the grant of Awards. Capitalized terms not defined elsewhere in the text are defined in Section 21.

**2. SHARES SUBJECT TO THE PLAN.**

2.1 Number of Shares Available. Subject to Section 2.3 and any other applicable provisions hereof, the total number of Shares reserved and available for grant and issuance pursuant to this Plan is 600,000 Shares subject to Awards and Shares issued under this Plan under any Award, will again be available for grant and issuance in connection with subsequent Awards under this Plan to the extent such Shares: (a) are subject to issuance upon exercise of an Option granted under this Plan but which cease to be subject to the Option for any reason other than exercise of the Option; (b) are subject to Awards granted under this Plan that are forfeited or are repurchased by the Company at the original issue price; (c) are subject to Awards granted under this Plan that otherwise terminate without such Shares being issued; or (d) are used to pay the exercise price of an Award or to satisfy applicable tax withholding obligations with respect to all types of Awards. To the extent an Award under the Plan is paid out in cash rather than Shares, such cash payment will not result in reducing the number of Shares available for issuance under the Plan.

2.2 Minimum Share Reserve. At all times the Company will reserve and keep available a sufficient number of Shares as will be required to satisfy the requirements of all outstanding Awards granted under this Plan and all other outstanding but unvested Awards granted under this Plan.

2.3 Adjustment of Shares. If the number of outstanding Shares is changed by a stock dividend, recapitalization, stock split, reverse stock split, subdivision, combination, reclassification or similar change in the capital structure of the Company, without consideration, then (a) the number of Shares reserved for issuance and future grant under the Plan set forth in Section 2.1 and (b) the Exercise Prices of and number of Shares subject to outstanding Awards, will be proportionately adjusted, subject to any required action by the Board or the stockholders of the Company and in compliance with applicable securities laws; provided that fractions of a Share will not be issued.

**3. ELIGIBILITY.** Awards may be granted only to persons who, at the time of granting of the Award by the Committee: (a) are being hired as an Employee by the Company or any Subsidiary and such Award is a material inducement to such person being hired; (b) are being rehired as an Employee following a bona fide period of interruption of employment with the Company or any Subsidiary; or (c) will become an Employee of the Company or any Subsidiary in connection with a merger or acquisition.

---

#### 4. ADMINISTRATION.

4.1 Committee Composition; Authority. This Plan will be administered by the Committee or by the Board acting as the Committee. Subject to the general purposes, terms and conditions of this Plan, and to the direction of the Board, the Committee will have full power to implement and carry out this Plan. The Committee will have the authority to:

- (a) construe and interpret this Plan, any Award Agreement and any other agreement or document executed pursuant to this Plan;
- (b) prescribe, amend and rescind rules and regulations relating to this Plan or any Award;
- (c) select persons to receive Awards;
- (d) determine the form and terms and conditions, not inconsistent with the terms of the Plan, of any Award granted hereunder. Such terms and conditions include, but are not limited to, the exercise price, the time or times when Awards may vest and be exercised (which may be based on performance criteria), any vesting acceleration or waiver of forfeiture restrictions, and any restriction or limitation regarding any Award or the Shares relating thereto, based in each case on such factors as the Committee will determine;
- (e) determine the number of Shares or other consideration subject to Awards;
- (f) determine the Fair Market Value in good faith, if necessary;
- (g) determine whether Awards will be granted singly, in combination with, in tandem with, or as alternatives to, other Awards under this Plan or any other incentive or compensation plan of the Company or any Parent or Subsidiary of the Company;
- (h) grant waivers of Plan or Award conditions;
- (i) determine the vesting, exercisability and payment of Awards;
- (j) correct any defect, supply any omission or reconcile any inconsistency in this Plan, any Award or any Award Agreement;
- (k) determine whether an Award has been earned;
- (l) reduce or waive any criteria with respect to Performance Factors;
- (m) adjust Performance Factors to take into account changes in law and accounting or tax rules as the Committee deems necessary or appropriate to reflect the impact of extraordinary or unusual items, events or circumstances to avoid windfalls or hardships; and
- (n) make all other determinations necessary or advisable for the administration of this Plan.

---

4.2 Committee Interpretation and Discretion. Any determination made by the Committee with respect to any Award will be made in its sole discretion at the time of grant of the Award or, unless in contravention of any express term of the Plan or Award, at any later time, and such determination will be final and binding on the Company and all persons having an interest in any Award under the Plan. Any dispute regarding the interpretation of the Plan or any Award Agreement will be submitted by the Participant or Company to the Committee for review. The resolution of such a dispute by the Committee will be final and binding on the Company and the Participant. The Committee may delegate to one or more executive officers the authority to review and resolve disputes with respect to Awards held by Participants who are not Insiders, and such resolution will be final and binding on the Company and the Participant.

4.3 Section 16 of the Exchange Act. Awards granted to Insiders must be approved by two or more “*non-employee directors*” (as defined in the regulations promulgated under Section 16 of the Exchange Act).

4.4 Foreign Award Recipients. Notwithstanding any provision of this Plan to the contrary, in order to comply with the laws in other countries in which the Company and its Subsidiaries operate or have employees or other individuals eligible for Awards, the Committee, in its sole discretion, shall have the power and authority to: (a) determine which Subsidiaries shall be covered by this Plan; (b) determine which individuals outside the United States are eligible to participate in this Plan; (c) modify the terms and conditions of any Award granted to individuals outside the United States to comply with applicable foreign laws; (d) establish subplans and modify exercise procedures and other terms and procedures, to the extent the Committee determines such actions to be necessary or advisable (and such subplans and/or modifications shall be attached to this Plan as appendices); provided, however, that no such subplans and/or modifications shall increase the share limitations contained in this Plan; and (e) take any action, before or after an Award is made, that the Committee determines to be necessary or advisable to obtain approval or comply with any local governmental regulatory exemptions or approvals. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Committee may not take any actions hereunder, and no Awards shall be granted, that would violate the Exchange Act or any other applicable United States securities law, the Code, or any other applicable United States governing statute or law.

4.5 Documentation. The Award Agreement for a given Award, this Plan and any other documents may be delivered to, and accepted by, a Participant or any other person in any manner (including electronic distribution or posting) that meets applicable legal requirements.

**5. OPTIONS.** A stock option is the right, but not the obligation, to purchase Shares in the future. The Committee may grant Options to Participants, which will be nonqualified stock options and will determine the number of Shares subject to the Option, the Exercise Price of the Option, the period during which the Option may be exercised, and all other terms and conditions of the Option, subject to the following:

5.1 Option Grant. Each Option granted under this Plan will be a nonqualified stock option. An Option may be, but need not be, awarded or vested upon satisfaction of such Performance Factors (if any) during any Performance Period as are set out in advance in the

---

Participant's individual Award Agreement. If the Option is being earned upon the satisfaction of Performance Factors, then the Committee will: (a) determine the nature, length and starting date of any Performance Period for each Option; (b) select from among the Performance Factors to be used to measure the performance, if any; and (c) determine the number of Shares deemed subject to the Option. Performance Periods may overlap and Participants may participate simultaneously with respect to Options that are subject to different performance goals and other criteria.

5.2 Date of Grant. The date of grant of an Option will be the date on which the Committee makes the determination to grant such Option, or a specified future date. The Award Agreement and a copy of this Plan will be delivered to the Participant within a reasonable time after the granting of the Option.

5.3 Exercise Period. Options may vest and or be exercisable within the times or upon the conditions as set forth in the Award Agreement governing such Option; provided, however, that no Option will be exercisable after the expiration of ten (10) years from the date the Option is granted. The Committee also may provide for Options to become vested and or become exercisable at one time or from time to time, periodically or otherwise, in such number of Shares or percentage of Shares as the Committee determines.

5.4 Exercise Price. The Exercise Price of an Option will be determined by the Committee when the Option is granted. Payment for the Shares purchased may be made in accordance with Section 7. The Exercise Price of an Option shall not be less than 100% of the Fair Market Value per Share on the date of grant.

5.5 Method of Exercise. Any Option granted hereunder will be exercisable according to the terms of the Plan and at such times and under such conditions as determined by the Committee and set forth in the Award Agreement. An Option may not be exercised for a fraction of a Share. An Option will be deemed exercised when the Company receives (a) notice of exercise (in such form as the Committee may specify from time to time) from the person entitled to exercise the Option, and (b) full payment for the Shares with respect to which the Option is exercised (together with applicable withholding taxes). Full payment may consist of any consideration and method of payment authorized by the Committee and permitted by the Award Agreement and the Plan. Shares issued upon exercise of an Option will be issued in the name of the Participant. Until the Shares are issued (as evidenced by the appropriate entry on the books of the Company or of a duly authorized transfer agent of the Company), no right to vote or receive dividends or any other rights as a stockholder will exist with respect to the Shares, notwithstanding the exercise of the Option. The Company will issue (or cause to be issued) such Shares promptly after the Option is exercised. No adjustment will be made for a dividend or other right for which the record date is prior to the date the Shares are issued, except as provided in Section 2.3 of the Plan. Exercising an Option in any manner will decrease the number of Shares thereafter available, both for purposes of the Plan and for sale under the Option, by the number of Shares as to which the Option is exercised.

---

5.6 Termination. The exercise of an Option will be subject to the following (except as may be otherwise provided in an Award Agreement):

(a) If the Participant is Terminated for any reason except for Cause or the Participant's death or Disability, then the Participant may exercise such Participant's Options only to the extent that such Options would have been exercisable by the Participant on the Termination Date no later than 90 days after the Termination Date (or such shorter time period or longer time period not exceeding five years as may be determined by the Committee), but in any event no later than the expiration date of the Options.

(b) If the Participant is Terminated because of the Participant's death (or the Participant dies within 90 days after a Termination other than for Cause or because of the Participant's Disability), then the Participant's Options may be exercised only to the extent that such Options would have been exercisable by the Participant on the Termination Date and must be exercised by the Participant's legal representative, or authorized assignee, no later than 12 months after the Termination Date (or such shorter time period not less than six months or longer time period not exceeding five years as may be determined by the Committee), but in any event no later than the expiration date of the Options.

(c) If the Participant is Terminated because of the Participant's Disability, then the Participant's Options may be exercised only to the extent that such Options would have been exercisable by the Participant on the Termination Date and must be exercised by the Participant (or the Participant's legal representative or authorized assignee) no later than 12 months after the Termination Date, but in any event no later than the expiration date of the Options.

(d) If the Participant is Terminated for Cause, then Participant's Options will expire on such Participant's Termination Date, or at such later time and on such conditions as are determined by the Committee, but in any event no later than the expiration date of the Options.

5.7 Limitations on Exercise. The Committee may specify a minimum number of Shares that may be purchased on any exercise of an Option, provided that such minimum number will not prevent any Participant from exercising the Option for the full number of Shares for which it is then exercisable.

5.8 Modification, Extension or Renewal. The Committee may modify, extend or renew outstanding Options and authorize the grant of new Options in substitution therefor, provided that any such action may not, without the written consent of a Participant, impair any of such Participant's rights under any Option previously granted.

## **6. RESTRICTED STOCK UNITS.**

6.1 Awards of Restricted Stock Units. A Restricted Stock Unit award to a Participant may be settled in cash, or by issuance of those Shares (which may consist of Restricted Stock). All RSUs will be made pursuant to an Award Agreement.

6.2 Terms of RSUs. The Committee will determine the terms of an RSU including, without limitation: (a) the number of Shares subject to the RSU; (b) the time or times during which the RSU may be settled; and (c) the consideration to be distributed on settlement, and the effect of the Participant's Termination on each RSU. An RSU may be, but need not be,

---

awarded upon satisfaction of such Performance Factors (if any) during any Performance Period as are set out in advance in the Participant's Award Agreement. If the RSU is being earned upon satisfaction of Performance Factors, then the Committee will: (x) determine the nature, length and starting date of any Performance Period for the RSU; (y) select from among the Performance Factors to be used to measure the performance, if any; and (z) determine the number of Shares deemed subject to the RSU. Performance Periods may overlap and participants may participate simultaneously with respect to RSUs that are subject to different Performance Periods and different performance goals and other criteria.

6.3 Form and Timing of Settlement. Payment of earned RSUs will be made as soon as practicable after the date(s) determined by the Committee and set forth in the Award Agreement. The Committee, in its sole discretion, may settle earned RSUs in cash, Shares, or a combination of both. The Committee may also permit a Participant to defer payment under a RSU to a date or dates after the RSU is earned provided the terms of any deferral satisfy the requirements of Section 409A of the Code (or its successor) as set forth in the Award Agreement.

6.4 Modification, Extension or Renewal. The Committee may modify, extend or renew outstanding RSUs and authorize the grant of new RSUs in substitution therefor, provided that any such action may not, without the written consent of a Participant, impair any of such Participant's rights under any RSU previously granted.

6.5 Termination of Participant. Except as may be set forth in the Participant's Award Agreement, vesting ceases on such Participant's Termination Date (unless determined otherwise by the Committee).

## **7. PAYMENT FOR SHARE PURCHASES.**

Payment from a Participant for Shares purchased pursuant to this Plan may be made in cash or by check or, where expressly approved for the Participant by the Committee and where permitted by law (and to the extent not otherwise set forth in the applicable Award Agreement):

(a) by cancellation of indebtedness of the Company to the Participant;

(b) by surrender of shares of the Company held by the Participant that have a Fair Market Value on the date of surrender equal to the aggregate exercise price of the Shares as to which said Award will be exercised or settled;

(c) by waiver of compensation due or accrued to the Participant for services rendered or to be rendered to the Company or a Parent or Subsidiary of the Company;

(d) by consideration received by the Company pursuant to a broker-assisted and/or same day sale (or other) cashless exercise program implemented by the Company in connection with the Plan;

(e) by any combination of the foregoing; or

(f) by any other method of payment as is permitted by applicable law.

---

## **8. WITHHOLDING TAXES.**

8.1 Withholding Generally. Whenever Shares are to be issued in satisfaction of Awards granted under this Plan, the Company may require the Participant to remit to the Company an amount sufficient to satisfy applicable federal, state, local and international withholding tax requirements, or any other tax liability legally due from the Participant, prior to the delivery of Shares pursuant to exercise or settlement of any Award. Whenever payments in satisfaction of Awards granted under this Plan are to be made in cash, such payment will be net of an amount sufficient to satisfy applicable federal, state, local and international withholding tax requirements.

8.2 Stock Withholding. The Committee, in its sole discretion and pursuant to such procedures as it may specify from time to time, may require or permit a Participant to satisfy such tax withholding obligation, in whole or in part by (without limitation) (i) paying cash, (ii) electing to have the Company withhold otherwise deliverable cash or Shares having a Fair Market Value equal to up to the maximum statutory amount permitted to be withheld, or (iii) delivering to the Company already-owned Shares having a Fair Market Value equal to up to the maximum statutory amount permitted to be withheld. The Fair Market Value of the Shares to be withheld or delivered will be determined as of the date that the taxes are required to be withheld.

**9. TRANSFERABILITY.** Unless determined otherwise by the Committee, an Award may not be sold, pledged, assigned, hypothecated, transferred, or disposed of in any manner other than by will or by the laws of descent or distribution. If the Committee makes an Award transferable, such Award will contain such additional terms and conditions as the Committee deems appropriate. All Awards will be exercisable: (a) during the Participant's lifetime only by (i) the Participant, or (ii) the Participant's guardian or legal representative; and (b) after the Participant's death, by the legal representative of the Participant's heirs or legatees.

**10. PRIVILEGES OF STOCK OWNERSHIP; VOTING AND DIVIDENDS.** No Participant will have any of the rights of a stockholder with respect to any Shares until the Shares are issued to the Participant. After Shares are issued to the Participant, the Participant will be a stockholder and have all the rights of a stockholder with respect to such Shares, including the right to vote and receive all dividends or other distributions made or paid with respect to such Shares.

**11. CERTIFICATES.** All certificates for Shares or other securities delivered under this Plan will be subject to such stock transfer orders, legends and other restrictions as the Committee may deem necessary or advisable, including restrictions under any applicable federal, state or foreign securities law, or any rules, regulations and other requirements of the SEC or any stock exchange or automated quotation system upon which the Shares may be listed or quoted.

**12. ESCROW.** To enforce any restrictions on a Participant's Shares, the Committee may require the Participant to deposit all certificates or book entries representing Shares, together with stock powers or other instruments of transfer approved by the Committee, appropriately endorsed in blank, with the Company or an agent designated by the Company to hold in escrow until such restrictions have lapsed or terminated, and the Committee may cause a legend or legends referencing such restrictions to be placed on the certificates or book entries.

---

**13. EXCHANGE AND BUYOUT OF AWARDS.** The Committee may, with the consent of the respective Participants (unless not required pursuant to Sections 5.8 and 6.4 of this Plan) and to the extent permitted by applicable law, pay cash or issue new Awards in exchange for the surrender and cancellation of any, or all, outstanding Awards.

**14. SECURITIES LAW AND OTHER REGULATORY COMPLIANCE.** An Award will not be effective unless such Award is in compliance with all applicable federal and state securities laws, rules and regulations of any governmental body, and the requirements of any stock exchange or automated quotation system upon which the Shares may then be listed or quoted, as they are in effect on the date of grant of the Award and also on the date of exercise or other issuance. Notwithstanding any other provision in this Plan, the Company will have no obligation to issue or deliver certificates for Shares under this Plan prior to: (a) obtaining any approvals from governmental agencies that the Company determines are necessary or advisable; and/or (b) completion of any registration or other qualification of such Shares under any state or federal law or ruling of any governmental body that the Company determines to be necessary or advisable. The Company will be under no obligation to register the Shares with the SEC or to effect compliance with the registration, qualification or listing requirements of any state securities laws, stock exchange or automated quotation system, and the Company will have no liability for any inability or failure to do so.

**15. NO OBLIGATION TO EMPLOY.** Nothing in this Plan or any Award granted under this Plan will confer or be deemed to confer on any Participant any right to continue in the employ of, or to continue any other relationship with, the Company or any Parent or Subsidiary of the Company or limit in any way the right of the Company or any Parent or Subsidiary of the Company to terminate Participant's employment or other relationship at any time to the extent permitted by applicable law.

**16. CORPORATE TRANSACTIONS.** In the event of a Corporate Transaction any or all outstanding Awards may be assumed or replaced by the successor corporation, which assumption or replacement will be binding on all Participants. In the alternative, the successor corporation may substitute equivalent Awards or provide substantially similar consideration to Participants as was provided to stockholders (after taking into account the existing provisions of the Awards). The successor corporation may also issue, in place of outstanding Shares of the Company held by the Participant, substantially similar shares or other property subject to repurchase restrictions no less favorable to the Participant. In the event such successor or acquiring corporation (if any) refuses to assume, convert, replace or substitute Awards, as provided above, pursuant to a Corporate Transaction, then notwithstanding any other provision in this Plan to the contrary, such Awards will expire on such transaction at such time and on such conditions as the Board (or, the Committee, if so designated by the Board) will determine; provided the Board (or, the Committee, if so designated by the Board) may, in its sole discretion, accelerate the vesting of such Awards in connection with a Corporate Transaction. In addition, in the event such successor or acquiring corporation (if any) refuses to assume, convert, replace or substitute Awards, as provided above, pursuant to a Corporate Transaction, the Committee will notify the Participant in writing or electronically that such Award will be exercisable for a period

---

of time determined by the Committee in its sole discretion, and such Award will terminate upon the expiration of such period. Awards need not be treated similarly in a Corporate Transaction. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Section 16, the Committee, in its sole discretion, may grant Awards that provide for acceleration upon a Corporate Transaction or in other events in the specific Award Agreements and/or other contractual relationships with a Participant.

**17. TERM OF PLAN AND GOVERNING LAW.** Unless earlier terminated as provided herein, this Plan will become effective on the Effective Date and will terminate 10 years from the date this Plan is adopted by the Committee. This Plan and all Awards granted hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of Delaware.

**18. AMENDMENT OR TERMINATION OF PLAN.** The Board or Committee may at any time terminate or amend this Plan in any respect, including, without limitation, amendment of any form of Award Agreement or instrument to be executed pursuant to this Plan; provided, however, that the Board or Committee will not, without the approval of the stockholders of the Company, amend this Plan in any manner that requires such stockholder approval; provided further, that a Participant's Award will be governed by the version of this Plan then in effect at the time such Award was granted.

**19. NONEXCLUSIVITY OF THE PLAN.** Neither the adoption of this Plan by the Committee, nor any provision of this Plan, will be construed as creating any limitations on the power of the Board or Committee to adopt such additional compensation arrangements as it may deem desirable, including, without limitation, the granting of stock awards and bonuses otherwise than under this Plan, and such arrangements may be either generally applicable or applicable only in specific cases.

**20. INSIDER TRADING POLICY.** Each Participant who receives an Award will comply with any policy adopted by the Company from time to time covering transactions in the Company's securities by Employees, officers and/or directors of the Company.

**21. DEFINITIONS.** As used in this Plan, and except as elsewhere defined herein, the following terms will have the following meanings:

*"Award"* means any award under this Plan, including any Option or Restricted Stock Unit.

*"Award Agreement"* means, with respect to each Award, the written or electronic agreement between the Company and the Participant setting forth the terms and conditions of the Award, which will be in substantially a form (which need not be the same for each Participant) that the Committee has from time to time approved, and will comply with and be subject to the terms and conditions of this Plan.

*"Board"* means the Board of Directors of the Company.

*"Cause"* shall be defined as that term is defined in the Participant's offer letter or other applicable employment agreement; or, if there is no such definition, "Cause" means, as determined by the Company and unless otherwise provided in an applicable Award Agreement:

(i) the commission of any act by a Participant constituting financial dishonesty against the

---

Company or its Affiliates (which act would be chargeable as a crime under applicable law); (ii) a Participant's engaging in any other act of dishonesty, fraud, intentional misrepresentation, moral turpitude, illegality or harassment which, as determined in good faith by the Board, would: (A) materially adversely affect the business or the reputation of the Company or any of its affiliates with their respective current or prospective customers, suppliers, lenders and/or other third parties with whom such entity does or might do business; or (B) expose the Company or any of its affiliates to a risk of civil or criminal legal damages, liabilities or penalties; (iii) the repeated failure by a Participant to follow the directives of the chief executive officer of the Company or any of its affiliates or the Board, or (iv) any material misconduct, violation of the Company's or affiliates' policies, or willful and deliberate non-performance of duty by the Participant in connection with the business affairs of the Company or its affiliates.

“**Code**” means the United States Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the regulations promulgated thereunder.

“**Committee**” means the Compensation Committee of the Board, or such other committee of the Board, consisting only of independent members of the Board, to which administration of the Plan, or part of the Plan, has been delegated as permitted by applicable law, or the independent members of the Board acting in lieu of such a committee.

“**Company**” means Energeous Corporation, or any successor corporation.

“**Consultant**” means any person, including an advisor or independent contractor, engaged by the Company or a Parent or Subsidiary to render services to such entity.

“**Corporate Transaction**” means the occurrence of any of the following events: (a) any “**person**” (as such term is used in Sections 13(d) and 14(d) of the Exchange Act) or “**group**” (two or more persons acting as a partnership, limited partnership, syndicate or other group for the purpose of acquiring, holding, or disposing of the applicable securities referred to herein) becomes the “**beneficial owner**” (as defined in Rule 13d-3 of the Exchange Act), directly or indirectly, of securities of the Company representing fifty percent (50%) or more of the total voting power represented by the Company's then-outstanding voting securities; (b) the consummation of the sale or other disposition by the Company of all or substantially all of the Company's assets; (c) the consummation of a merger, reorganization, consolidation or similar transaction or series of related transactions of the Company with any other corporation, other than a merger, reorganization, consolidation or similar transaction (or series of related transactions) which would result in the voting securities of the Company outstanding immediately prior thereto continuing to represent (either by remaining outstanding or by being converted into voting securities of the surviving entity or its parent) at least a majority of the total voting power represented by the voting securities of the Company or such surviving entity or its parent outstanding immediately after such merger, reorganization, consolidation or similar transaction (or series of related transactions), or (d) any other transaction which qualifies as a “**corporate transaction**” under Section 424(a) of the Code wherein the stockholders of the Company give up all of their equity interest in the Company (except for the acquisition, sale or transfer of all or substantially all of the outstanding shares of the Company).

---

“**Disability**” means total and permanent disability as defined in Section 22(e)(3) of the Code, provided, however, that the Committee in its discretion may determine whether a total and permanent disability exists in accordance with non-discriminatory and uniform standards adopted by the Committee from time to time, whether temporary or permanent, partial or total, as determined by the Committee.

“**Effective Date**” means the date the Committee adopted the Plan.

“**Employee**” means any person, including officers, employed by the Company or any Parent or Subsidiary of the Company and who meets the eligibility requirements set forth in Section 3.

“**Exchange Act**” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

“**Exercise Price**” means the price at which a holder of an Award may purchase the Shares issuable upon exercise of an Award.

“**Fair Market Value**” means, as of any date, the value of a share of the Company’s Common Stock determined as follows: (a) if such Common Stock is publicly traded and is then listed on a national securities exchange, its closing price on the date of determination on the principal national securities exchange on which the Common Stock is listed or admitted to trading as reported in *The Wall Street Journal* or such other source as the Board or the Committee deems reliable; (b) if such Common Stock is publicly traded but is neither listed nor admitted to trading on a national securities exchange, the average of the closing bid and asked prices on the date of determination as reported in *The Wall Street Journal* or such other source as the Board or the Committee deems reliable; or (c) if none of the foregoing is applicable, by the Board or the Committee in good faith.

“**Insider**” means an officer of the Company or any other person whose transactions in the Company’s Common Stock are subject to Section 16 of the Exchange Act.

“**Option**” means an award of an option to purchase Shares pursuant to Section 5.

“**Parent**” means any corporation (other than the Company) in an unbroken chain of corporations ending with the Company if each of such corporations other than the Company owns stock possessing 50% or more of the total combined voting power of all classes of stock in one of the other corporations in such chain.

“**Participant**” means a newly hired Employee who receives an Award under this Plan at the time of his or her employment. The term “Participant” will include individuals who were previously employed by the Company, or any Parent or Subsidiary of the Company, who have undergone a bona fide period of non-employment by the Company. The term “Participant” will also include individuals who become Employees of the Company, or any Parent or Subsidiary of the Company, as the result of a merger or acquisition.

“**Performance Factors**” means the factors selected by the Committee to determine whether performance goals established by the Committee applicable to Awards have been satisfied.

---

**“Performance Period”** means the period of service determined by the Committee during which years of service or performance is to be measured for the Award.

**“Plan”** means this Energous Corporation 2017 Equity Inducement Plan.

**“Restricted Stock Unit”** or **“RSU”** means an Award granted pursuant to Section 6 of the Plan.

**“SEC”** means the United States Securities and Exchange Commission.

**“Securities Act”** means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

**“Shares”** means shares of the Company’s Common Stock and any successor security, as adjusted pursuant to Section 2.3 or any other applicable provision hereof.

**“Subsidiary”** means any corporation (other than the Company) in an unbroken chain of corporations beginning with the Company if each of the corporations other than the last corporation in the unbroken chain owns stock possessing 50% or more of the total combined voting power of all classes of stock in one of the other corporations in such chain.

**“Termination”** or **“Terminated”** means, for purposes of this Plan with respect to a Participant, that the Participant has for any reason ceased to provide services as an employee, officer, director, consultant, independent contractor or advisor to the Company or a Parent or Subsidiary of the Company. An employee will not be deemed to have ceased to provide services in the case of (a) sick leave, (b) military leave, or (c) any other leave of absence approved by the Committee; provided, that such leave is for a period of not more than 90 days, unless reemployment upon the expiration of such leave is guaranteed by contract or statute or unless provided otherwise pursuant to formal policy adopted from time to time by the Company and issued and promulgated to employees in writing. In the case of any employee on an approved leave of absence, the Committee may make such provisions respecting suspension of vesting of the Award while on leave from the employ of the Company or a Parent or Subsidiary of the Company as it may deem appropriate, except that in no event may an Award be exercised after the expiration of the term set forth in the applicable Award Agreement. The Committee will have sole discretion to determine whether a Participant has ceased to provide services and the effective date on which the Participant ceased to provide services (the **“Termination Date”**).

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION  
2017 EQUITY INDUCEMENT PLAN  
NOTICE OF RESTRICTED STOCK UNIT AWARD**

Unless otherwise defined herein, the terms defined in the Energous Corporation (the "*Company*") 2017 Inducement Plan (the "*Plan*") shall have the same meanings in this Notice of Restricted Stock Unit Award (the "*Notice*").

**Name:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Address:** \_\_\_\_\_

You ("*Participant*") have been granted an award of Restricted Stock Units ("*RSUs*") under the Plan subject to the terms and conditions of the Plan, this Notice and the attached Award Agreement (Restricted Stock Units) (the "*Agreement*").

**Number of RSUs:** \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Date of Grant:** \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Vesting Commencement Date:** \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Expiration Date:** The date on which settlement (or forfeiture) of all RSUs granted hereunder occurs, with earlier expiration upon the Termination Date.

**Vesting Schedule:** Subject to the limitations set forth in this Notice, the Plan and the Agreement, the RSUs will vest in accordance with the following schedule:

You acknowledge that the vesting of the RSUs pursuant to this Notice is earned only by continuing service as an active Employee (or a Consultant, only after you become a Consultant following a period of being an Employee) of the Company. You also understand that this Notice is subject to the terms and conditions of both the Agreement and the Plan, both of which are incorporated herein by reference. By signing below or electronically accepting the Agreement, you confirm you have read and agreed to the terms and conditions of this Notice, the Agreement and the Plan.

**PARTICIPANT**

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Print Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Its: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

---

**ENERGIOUS CORPORATION**  
**2017 EQUITY INDUCEMENT PLAN**  
**AWARD AGREEMENT (RESTRICTED STOCK UNITS)**

Unless otherwise defined herein, the terms defined in the Energoous Corporation (the “*Company*”) 2017 Equity Inducement Plan (the “*Plan*”) shall have the same defined meanings in this Award Agreement (Restricted Stock Units) (the “*Agreement*”).

Participant has been granted Restricted Stock Units (“*RSUs*”) subject to the terms, restrictions and conditions of the Plan, the Notice of Restricted Stock Unit Award (the “*Notice*”) and this Agreement.

**1. Settlement.** Settlement of RSUs shall be made within 30 days following the applicable date of vesting under the vesting schedule set forth in the Notice. Settlement of RSUs shall be in Shares or cash.

**2. No Stockholder Rights.** Unless and until such time as Shares are issued in settlement of vested RSUs, Participant shall have no ownership of the Shares allocated to the RSUs and shall have no right to dividends or to vote such Shares.

**3. Dividend Equivalents.** Dividends, if any (whether in cash or Shares), shall not be credited to Participant until he or she has acquired Shares in the Company.

**4. No Transfer.** The RSUs and any interest therein shall not be sold, assigned, transferred, pledged, hypothecated, or otherwise disposed of.

**5. Termination.** If Participant’s Termination (for any reason whatsoever, whether or not later to be found invalid or in breach of employment laws in the jurisdiction where Participant is employed or the terms of Participant’s employment agreement, if any), all unvested RSUs shall be forfeited to the Company forthwith, and all rights of Participant to such RSUs shall immediately terminate and will not be extended by any notice period (e.g., active services would not include any contractual notice period or any period of “*garden leave*” or similar period mandated under employment laws in the jurisdiction where Participant is employed or the terms of Participant’s employment agreement, if any). In case of any dispute as to whether Termination has occurred (including whether Participant may still be considered to be providing services while on an approved leave of absence), the Committee shall have sole discretion to determine whether such Termination has occurred and the effective date of such Termination.

**6. Tax Obligations.** Participant acknowledges that, regardless of any action taken by the Company or, if different, Participant’s employer (the “*Employer*”) the ultimate liability for all income tax, social insurance, payroll tax, fringe benefits tax, payment on account or other tax-related items related to Participant’s participation in the Plan and legally applicable to Participant (“*Tax-Related Items*”), is and remains Participant’s responsibility and may exceed the amount actually withheld by the Company or the Employer. Participant further acknowledges that the Company and/or the Employer (1) make no representations or undertakings regarding the treatment of any Tax-Related Items in connection with any aspect of the RSUs, including, but not limited to, the grant, vesting or settlement of the RSUs, the subsequent sale of Shares acquired pursuant to such settlement and the receipt of any dividends and/or any dividend

---

equivalents; and (2) do not commit to and are under no obligation to structure the terms of the grant or any aspect of the RSUs to reduce or eliminate Participant's liability for Tax-Related Items or achieve any particular tax result. Further, if Participant is subject to Tax-Related Items in more than one jurisdiction between the Date of Grant and the date of any relevant taxable or tax withholding event, as applicable, Participant acknowledges that the Company and/or the Employer (or former employer, as applicable) may be required to withhold or account for Tax-Related Items in more than one jurisdiction.

Prior to any relevant taxable or tax withholding event, as applicable, Participant agrees to make adequate arrangements satisfactory to the Company and/or the Employer to satisfy all Tax-Related Items. In this regard, Participant authorizes the Company and/or the Employer, or their respective agents, at their discretion, to satisfy the obligations with regard to all Tax-Related Items by one or a combination of the following:

(i) withholding from Participant's wages or other cash compensation paid to Participant by the Company and/or the Employer; or

(ii) withholding from proceeds of the sale of Shares acquired upon vesting/settlement of the RSUs either through a voluntary sale or through a mandatory sale arranged by the Company (on Participant's behalf pursuant to this authorization); or

(iii) withholding in Shares to be issued upon settlement of the RSUs. If Participant is a Section 16 officer of the Company under the Exchange Act, unless determined otherwise by the Committee in advance of a Tax-Related Items withholding event, the method of withholding for the RSUs will be this subsection (iii).

Depending on the withholding method, the Company may withhold or account for Tax-Related Items by considering applicable statutory withholding or other withholding rates, including up to maximum applicable rates. If applicable, Participant will receive a refund of any over-withheld amount in cash and will have no entitlement to the Common Stock equivalent. If the obligation for Tax-Related Items is satisfied by withholding in Shares, for tax purposes, Participant is deemed to have been issued the full number of Shares subject to the vested RSUs, notwithstanding that a number of the Shares are held back solely for the purpose of paying the Tax-Related Items.

Finally, Participant agrees to pay to the Company or the Employer any amount of Tax-Related Items that the Company or the Employer may be required to withhold or account for as a result of Participant's participation in the Plan that cannot be satisfied by the means previously described. The Company may refuse to issue or deliver the Shares or the proceeds of the sale of Shares, if Participant fails to comply with Participant's obligations in connection with the Tax-Related Items.

**7. U.S. Tax Consequences.** If Participant is a U.S. taxpayer, Participant acknowledges that there will be tax consequences upon the vesting and/or settlement of the RSUs or disposition of the Shares, if any, received in connection therewith, and Participant should consult a tax adviser regarding Participant's tax obligations prior to such vesting, settlement or disposition. Upon vesting of the RSUs, the Fair Market Value of the Shares subject to the RSUs is subject to

---

payroll taxes (e.g., FICA), and when the Shares are released following vesting, the Fair Market Value of the Shares is subject to U.S. federal, state and local income taxes. Upon disposition of the Shares, any subsequent increase or decrease in value will be treated as short-term or long-term capital gain or loss, depending on whether the Shares are held for more than 12 months from the date of settlement. Further, an RSU may be considered a deferral of compensation that may be subject to Section 409A of the Code. Section 409A of the Code imposes special rules to the timing of making and effecting certain amendments of this RSU with respect to distribution of any deferred compensation. You should consult your personal tax advisor for more information on the actual and potential tax consequences of this RSU.

**8. Acknowledgement of Nature of the Grant.** The Company and Participant agree that the RSUs are granted under and governed by the Notice, this Agreement and the provisions of the Plan. Participant acknowledges receipt of a copy of the Plan and the Plan prospectus, represents that Participant has carefully read and is familiar with their provisions, and hereby accepts the RSUs subject to all of the terms and conditions set forth herein and those set forth in the Plan and the Notice. Participant further acknowledges, understands and agrees that:

(a) the Plan is established voluntarily by the Company, it is discretionary in nature and it may be modified, amended, suspended or terminated by the Company at any time, to the extent permitted by the Plan;

(b) the grant of the RSUs is voluntary and occasional and does not create any contractual or other right to receive future grants of RSUs, or benefits in lieu of RSUs, even if RSUs have been granted in the past;

(c) all decisions with respect to future RSUs or other grants, if any, will be at the sole discretion of the Company;

(d) the RSU grant and Participant's participation in the Plan shall not create a right to employment or be interpreted as forming an employment or services contract with the Company, the Employer, its Parent, Subsidiary or affiliate of the Company and shall not interfere with the ability of the Company, the Employer, its Parent, Subsidiary or affiliate of the Company, as applicable, to terminate Participant's employment or service relationship (if any) for any reason;

(e) Participant is voluntarily participating in the Plan;

(f) the RSUs and the Shares subject to the RSUs are not intended to replace any pension rights or compensation;

(g) the RSUs and the Shares subject to the RSUs, and the income and value of same, are not part of normal or expected compensation for purposes of calculating any severance, resignation, termination, redundancy, dismissal, end-of-service payments, bonuses, long-service awards, pension or retirement or welfare benefits or similar payments;

(h) the future value of the underlying Shares is unknown, indeterminable and cannot be predicted with certainty;

---

(i) no claim or entitlement to compensation or damages shall arise from forfeiture of the RSUs resulting from Participant's Termination (for any reason whatsoever whether or not later found to be invalid or in breach of employment laws in the jurisdiction where Participant is employed or the terms of Participant's employment agreement, if any), and in consideration of the grant of the RSUs to which Participant is otherwise not entitled, Participant irrevocably agrees never to institute any claim against the Company, its Parent, any of its Subsidiaries, affiliates or the Employer, waives his or her ability, if any, to bring any such claim, and releases the Company, its Parent, Subsidiaries and affiliates and the Employer from any such claim; if, notwithstanding the foregoing, any such claim is allowed by a court of competent jurisdiction, then, by participating in the Plan, Participant shall be deemed irrevocably to have agreed not to pursue such claim and agrees to execute any and all documents necessary to request dismissal or withdrawal of such claim; and

(j) unless otherwise provided in the Plan or by the Company in its discretion, the RSUs and the benefits evidenced by this Agreement do not create any entitlement to have the RSUs or any such benefits transferred to, or assumed by, another company nor be exchanged, cashed out or substituted for, in connection with any Corporate Transaction affecting the Shares of the Company.

**9. No Advice Regarding Grant.** The Company is not providing any tax, legal or financial advice, nor is the Company making any recommendations regarding Participant's participation in the Plan, or Participant's acquisition or sale of the underlying Shares. Participant is hereby advised to consult with his or her own personal tax, legal and financial advisors regarding his or her participation in the Plan before taking any action related to the Plan.

**10. Data Privacy.** Participant hereby explicitly and unambiguously consents to the collection, use and transfer, in electronic or other form, of Participant's personal data as described in this Agreement and any other RSU grant materials by and among, as applicable, the Employer, the Company, its Parent, Subsidiaries and affiliates for the exclusive purpose of implementing, administering and managing Participant's participation in the Plan.

*Participant understands that the Company and the Employer may hold certain personal information about Participant, including, but not limited to, Participant's name, home address and telephone number, date of birth, social insurance number or other identification number, salary, nationality, job title, any Shares of stock or directorships held in the Company, details of all RSUs or any other entitlement to Shares awarded, canceled, vested, unvested or outstanding in Participant's favor ("Data"), for the exclusive purpose of implementing, administering and managing the Plan.*

*Participant understands that Data will be transferred to a designated Plan broker or such other stock plan service provider as may be selected by the Company in the future, which is assisting the Company with the implementation, administration and management of the Plan. Participant understands that the recipients of the Data may be located in the United States or elsewhere, and that the recipients' country (e.g., the United States) may have different data privacy laws and protections than Participant's country. Participant understands that if he or she resides outside the United States, he or she may request a list with the names and addresses of any potential recipients of the Data by contacting his or her*

---

*local human resources representative. Participant authorizes the Company, its designated Plan broker, and any other possible recipients which may assist the Company (presently or in the future) with implementing, administering and managing the Plan to receive, possess, use, retain and transfer the Data, in electronic or other form, for the sole purpose of implementing, administering and managing his or her participation in the Plan. Participant understands that Data will be held only as long as is necessary to implement, administer and manage Participant's participation in the Plan. Participant understands if he or she resides outside the United States, he or she may, at any time, view Data, request additional information about the storage and processing of Data, require any necessary amendments to Data or refuse or withdraw the consents herein, in any case without cost, by contacting in writing his or her local human resources representative. Further, Participant understands that he or she is providing the consents herein on a purely voluntary basis. If Participant does not consent, or if Participant later seeks to revoke his or her consent, Participant's employment status and/or career with the Employer will not be adversely affected; the only adverse consequence of refusing or withdrawing Participant's consent is that the Company would not be able to grant Participant RSUs or other Awards or administer or maintain such Awards. Therefore, Participant understands that refusing or withdrawing his or her consent may affect Participant's ability to participate in the Plan. For more information on the consequences of Participant's refusal to consent or withdrawal of consent, Participant understands that he or she may contact his or her local human resources representative.*

**11. Entire Agreement; Enforcement of Rights.** This Agreement, the Plan and the Notice constitute the entire agreement and understanding of the parties relating to the subject matter herein and supersede all prior discussions between them. Any prior agreements, commitments or negotiations concerning the purchase of the Shares hereunder are superseded. No modification of or amendment to this Agreement, nor any waiver of any rights under this Agreement, shall be effective unless in writing and signed by the parties to this Agreement. Participant acknowledges that a waiver by the Company of breach of any provision of this Agreement shall not operate or be construed as a waiver of any other provision of this Agreement, or of any subsequent breach by Participant or any other Plan participant.

**12. Compliance with Laws and Regulations.** Notwithstanding any other provision of the Plan or this Agreement, unless there is an available exemption from any registration, qualification or other legal requirement applicable to the Shares, the Company shall not be required to deliver any Shares issuable upon settlement of the RSU prior to the completion of any registration or qualification of the Shares under any local, state, federal or foreign securities or exchange control law or under rulings or regulations of the U.S. SEC or of any other governmental regulatory body, or prior to obtaining any approval or other clearance from any local, state, federal or foreign governmental agency, which registration, qualification or approval the Company shall, in its absolute discretion, deem necessary or advisable. Participant understands that the Company is under no obligation to register or qualify the Shares with the SEC or any state or foreign securities commission or to seek approval or clearance from any governmental authority for the issuance or sale of the Shares. Further, Participant agrees that the Company shall have unilateral authority to amend the Plan and the Agreement without Participant's consent to the extent necessary to comply with securities or other laws applicable to issuance of Shares.

---

**13. Governing Law and Venue; Severability.** If one or more provisions of this Agreement are held to be unenforceable under applicable law, the parties agree to renegotiate such provision in good faith. In the event that the parties cannot reach a mutually agreeable and enforceable replacement for such provision, then (a) such provision shall be excluded from this Agreement, (b) the balance of this Agreement shall be interpreted as if such provision were so excluded and (c) the balance of this Agreement shall be enforceable in accordance with its terms. This Agreement and all acts and transactions pursuant hereto and the rights and obligations of the parties hereto shall be governed, construed and interpreted in accordance with the laws of the State of Delaware, without giving effect to principles of conflicts of law. For purposes of any action, lawsuit or other proceedings brought to enforce this Agreement, relating to it, or arising from it, the parties hereby submit to and consent to the sole and exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of San Jose, California, or the federal courts for the United States for the Northern District of California, and no other courts, where this grant is made and/or to be performed.

**14. Imposition of Other Requirements.** The Company reserves the right to impose other requirements on Participant's participation in the Plan, on the RSUs and on any Shares acquired under the Plan, to the extent the Company determines it is necessary or advisable for legal or administrative reasons, and to require Participant to sign any additional agreements or undertakings that may be necessary to accomplish the foregoing.

By the signature on, or electronic acceptance of, the Notice by each of the Participant and the Company's representative, Participant and the Company agree that this RSU is granted under and governed by the terms and conditions of the Plan, the Notice and this Agreement. Participant has reviewed the Plan, the Notice and this Agreement in its entirety, has had an opportunity to obtain the advice of counsel prior to executing this Agreement, and fully understands all provisions of the Plan, the Notice and this Agreement. Participant hereby agrees to accept as binding, conclusive and final all decisions or interpretations of the Committee upon any questions relating to the Plan, the Notice and this Agreement. Participant further agrees to notify the Company upon any change in Participant's residence address.

---

**ENERGIOUS CORPORATION  
2017 EQUITY INDUCEMENT PLAN |  
NOTICE OF STOCK OPTION AWARD**

Unless otherwise defined herein, the terms defined in the Energeous Corporation (the “*Company*”) 2017 Equity Inducement Plan (the “*Plan*”) shall have the same meanings in this Notice of Stock Option Grant (the “*Notice*”).

**Name:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Address:** \_\_\_\_\_

You (“*Participant*”) have been granted an option to purchase Shares of Common Stock of the Company under the Plan subject to the terms and conditions of the Plan, this Notice and the Stock Option Award Agreement (the “*Agreement*”).

**Date of Grant:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Vesting Commencement Date:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise Price per Share:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Total Number of Shares:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Type of Option:** \_\_\_\_\_ Non-Qualified Stock Option \_\_\_\_\_

**Expiration Date:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Post-Termination Exercise Period:** Termination for Cause = None  
Voluntary Termination = 90 days  
Termination without Cause = 90 days  
Disability = 12 Months  
Death = 12 Months

**Vesting Schedule:** Subject to the limitations set forth in this Notice, the Plan and the Agreement, the Option will vest and may be exercised, in whole or in part, in accordance with the following schedule:

You acknowledge that the vesting of the Options pursuant to this Notice is earned only by continuing service as an active Employee of the Company. You also understand that this Notice is subject to the terms and conditions of both the Agreement and the Plan, both of which are incorporated herein by reference. By signing below or electronically accepting the Agreement, you confirm you have read and agreed to the terms and conditions of this Notice, the Agreement and the Plan.

---

**PARTICIPANT**

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Print Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Its: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

---

**ENERGIOUS CORPORATION  
2017 EQUITY INDUCEMENT PLAN  
STOCK OPTION AWARD AGREEMENT**

Unless otherwise defined herein, the terms defined in the Energoous Corporation (the “*Company*”) 2017 Equity Inducement Plan (the “*Plan*”) shall have the same defined meanings in this Stock Option Award Agreement (the “*Agreement*”).

Participant has been granted an option to purchase Shares (the “*Option*”), subject to the terms and conditions of the Plan, the Notice of Stock Option Grant (the “*Notice*”) and this Agreement.

**1. Vesting Rights.** Subject to the applicable provisions of the Plan and this Agreement, this Option may be exercised, in whole or in part, in accordance with the schedule set forth in the Notice. In the event Participant’s Termination (for any reason whatsoever, whether or not later found to be invalid or in breach of employment laws in the jurisdiction where Participant is employed or the terms of Participant’s employment agreement, if any), Participant’s right to vest in the Option under the Plan, if any, will terminate effective as of the date that Participant is no longer actively providing services and will not be extended by any notice period (e.g., active services would not include any contractual notice period or any period of “*garden leave*” or similar period mandated under employment laws in the jurisdiction where Participant is employed or the terms of Participant’s employment agreement, if any); the Committee shall have the exclusive discretion to determine when Participant is no longer actively providing services for purposes of his or her Option grant (including whether Participant may still be considered to be providing services while on an approved leave of absence).

**2. Termination Period.**

(a) General Rule. Except as provided below, and subject to the Plan, this Option may be exercised for 90 days after Participant’s Termination with the Company or any Parent or Subsidiary. In no event shall this Option be exercised later than the Expiration Date set forth in the Notice.

(b) Death; Disability. Unless provided otherwise in the Notice, upon Participant’s Termination by reason of his or her Disability or death, or if a Participant dies within 90 days of the Termination Date, this Option may be exercised for twelve months, provided that in no event shall this Option be exercised later than the Expiration Date set forth in the Notice.

(c) Cause. Upon Participant’s Termination for Cause, the Option shall expire on such date of Participant’s Termination Date.

(d) Measurement Date. In the event of Participant’s Termination (whether or not in breach of local labor laws), Participant’s right to exercise the Option after Termination, if any, will be measured by the date of termination of Participant’s active services and will not be extended by any notice period mandated under employment laws in the jurisdiction where Participant is employed or terms of Participant’s employment agreement, if any).

---

**3. Grant of Option.** The Participant named in the Notice has been granted an Option for the number of Shares set forth in the Notice at the exercise price per Share set forth in the Notice (the “**Exercise Price**”). In the event of a conflict between the terms and conditions of the Plan and the terms and conditions of this Agreement, the terms and conditions of the Plan shall prevail.

**4. Exercise of Option.**

(a) **Right to Exercise.** This Option is exercisable during its term in accordance with the Vesting Schedule set forth in the Notice and the applicable provisions of the Plan and this Agreement. In the event of Participant’s death, Disability, Termination for Cause or other Termination, the exercisability of the Option is governed by the applicable provisions of the Plan, the Notice and this Agreement.

(b) **Method of Exercise.** This Option is exercisable by delivery of an exercise notice (the “**Exercise Notice**”), which shall state the election to exercise the Option, the number of Shares in respect of which the Option is being exercised (the “**Exercised Shares**”), and such other representations and agreements as may be required by the Company pursuant to the provisions of the Plan. The Exercise Notice shall be delivered in person, by mail, via electronic mail or facsimile or by other authorized method to the Secretary of the Company or other person designated by the Company. The Exercise Notice shall be accompanied by payment of the aggregate Exercise Price as to all Exercised Shares. This Option shall be deemed to be exercised upon receipt by the Company of such fully executed Exercise Notice accompanied by such aggregate Exercise Price.

(c) No Shares shall be issued pursuant to the exercise of this Option unless such issuance and exercise complies with all relevant provisions of securities law and the requirements of any stock exchange or quotation service upon which the Shares are then listed. Assuming such compliance, for tax purposes the Exercised Shares shall be considered transferred to the Participant on the date the Option is exercised with respect to such Exercised Shares.

**5. Method of Payment.** Unless provided otherwise by the Company, in its sole discretion, payment of the aggregate Exercise Price shall be by any of the following, or a combination thereof, at the election of the Participant:

- (a) cash;
- (b) check;
- (c) a “**broker-assisted**” or “**same-day sale**” (as described in Section 7(d) of the Plan); or
- (d) other method authorized by the Company.

---

**6. Non-Transferability of Option.** This Option may not be transferred in any manner other than by will or by the laws of descent or distribution or court order and may be exercised during the lifetime of Participant only by the Participant unless otherwise permitted by the Committee on a case-by-case basis. The terms of the Plan and this Agreement shall be binding upon the executors, administrators, heirs, successors and assigns of the Participant.

**7. Term of Option.** This Option shall in any event expire on the expiration date set forth in the Notice, which date is 10 years after the Date of Grant.

**8. Tax Obligations.** Participant acknowledges that, regardless of any action taken by the Company or, if different, Participant's employer (the "**Employer**"), the ultimate liability for all income tax, social insurance, payroll tax, fringe benefits tax, payment on account or other tax related items related to Participant's participation in the Plan and legally applicable to Participant ("**Tax-Related Items**"), is and remains Participant's responsibility and may exceed the amount actually withheld by the Company or the Employer. Participant further acknowledges that the Company and/or the Employer (i) make no representations or undertakings regarding the treatment of any Tax-Related Items in connection with any aspect of the Option, including, but not limited to, the grant, vesting or exercise of the Option, the subsequent sale of Shares acquired pursuant to such exercise and the receipt of any dividends; and (ii) do not commit to and are under no obligation to structure the terms of the grant or any aspect of the Option to reduce or eliminate Participant's liability for Tax-Related Items or achieve any particular tax result. Further, if Participant is subject to Tax-Related Items in more than one jurisdiction between the Date of Grant and the date of any relevant taxable or tax withholding event, as applicable, Participant acknowledges that the Company and/or the Employer (or former employer, as applicable) may be required to withhold or account for Tax-Related Items in more than one jurisdiction.

Prior to the relevant taxable or tax withholding event, as applicable, Participant agrees to make adequate arrangements satisfactory to the Company and/or the Employer to satisfy all Tax-Related Items. In this regard, Participant authorizes the Company and/or the Employer, or their respective agents, at their discretion, to satisfy the obligations with regard to all Tax-Related Items by one or a combination of the following:

(a) withholding from Participant's wages or other cash compensation paid to Participant by the Company and/or the Employer; or

(b) withholding from proceeds of the sale of Shares acquired at exercise of the Option either through a voluntary sale or through a mandatory sale arranged by the Company (on Participant's behalf pursuant to this authorization) without further consent.

Depending on the withholding method, the Company may withhold or account for Tax-Related Items by considering applicable statutory withholding or other withholding rates, including up to maximum applicable rates. If applicable, Participant will receive a refund of any over-withheld amount in cash and will have no entitlement to the Common Stock equivalent.

---

Finally, Participant agrees to pay to the Company or the Employer any amount of Tax-Related Items that the Company or the Employer may be required to withhold or account for as a result of Participant's participation in the Plan that cannot be satisfied by the means previously described. The Company may refuse to issue or deliver the Shares or the proceeds of the sale of Shares if Participant fails to comply with his or her obligations in connection with the Tax-Related Items.

**9. Acknowledgement of Nature of the Grant.** The Company and Participant agree that the Option is granted under and governed by this Agreement and by the provisions of the Plan (incorporated herein by reference). Participant acknowledges receipt of a copy of the Plan and the Plan prospectus, represents that Participant has carefully read and is familiar with their provisions and hereby accepts the Option subject to all of the terms and conditions set forth herein and those set forth in the Plan and the Notice. Participant further acknowledges, understands and agrees that:

(a) the Plan is established voluntarily by the Company, it is discretionary in nature, and may be amended, suspended or Terminated by the Company at any time, to the extent permitted by the Plan;

(b) the grant of the Option is voluntary and occasional and does not create any contractual or other right to receive future grants of Options, or benefits in lieu of Options, even if Options have been granted in the past;

(c) all decisions with respect to future Option or other grants, if any, will be at the sole discretion of the Company;

(d) the Option grant and Participant's participation in the Plan shall not create a right to employment or be interpreted as forming an employment or service contract with the Company, the Employer or any Parent, Subsidiary or affiliate of the Company, and shall not interfere with the ability of the Company, the Employer or any Parent, Subsidiary or affiliate of the Company, as applicable, to terminate Participant's employment or service relationship (if any);

(e) Participant is voluntarily participating in the Plan;

(f) the Option and any Shares acquired under the Plan are not intended to replace any pension rights or compensation;

(g) the Option and any Shares acquired under the Plan and the income and value of same, are not part of normal or expected compensation for purposes of calculating any severance, resignation, termination, redundancy, dismissal, end-of-service payments, bonuses, long-service awards, pension or retirement or welfare benefits or similar payments;

---

(h) the future value of the Shares underlying the Option is unknown, indeterminable, and cannot be predicted with certainty;

(i) if the underlying Shares do not increase in value, the Option will have no value;

(j) if Participant exercises the Option and acquires Shares, the value of such Shares may increase or decrease in value, even below the Exercise Price;

(k) no claim or entitlement to compensation or damages shall arise from forfeiture of the Option resulting from Participant's Termination (for any reason whatsoever, whether or not later found to be invalid or in breach of employment laws in the jurisdiction where Participant is employed or the terms of Participant's employment agreement, if any), and in consideration of the grant of the Option to which Participant is otherwise not entitled, Participant irrevocably agrees never to institute any claim against the Company, its Parent, or any of its Subsidiaries or affiliates or the Employer, waives his or her ability, if any, to bring any such claim, and releases the Company, its Parent, Subsidiaries and affiliates and the Employer from any such claim; if, notwithstanding the foregoing, any such claim is allowed by a court of competent jurisdiction, then, by participating in the Plan, Participant shall be deemed irrevocably to have agreed not to pursue such claim and agree to execute any and all documents necessary to request dismissal or withdrawal of such claim;

(l) unless otherwise provided in the Plan or by the Company in its discretion, the Option and the benefits evidenced by this Agreement do not create any entitlement to have the Option or any such benefits transferred to, or assumed by, another company nor to be exchanged, cashed out or substituted for, in connection with any Corporate Transaction affecting the Shares; and

**10. No Advice Regarding Grant.** The Company is not providing any tax, legal or financial advice, nor is the Company making any recommendations regarding Participant's participation in the Plan, or Participant's acquisition or sale of the underlying Shares. Participant is hereby advised to consult with his or her own personal tax, legal and financial advisors regarding his or her participation in the Plan before taking any action related to the Plan.

**11. Data Privacy.** *Participant hereby explicitly and unambiguously consents to the collection, use and transfer, in electronic or other form, of Participant's personal data as described in this Agreement and any other Option grant materials by and among, as applicable, the Employer, the Company and its Parent, Subsidiaries and affiliates for the exclusive purpose of implementing, administering and managing Participant's participation in the Plan.*

*Participant understands that the Company and the Employer may hold certain personal information about Participant, including, but not limited to, Participant's name, home address and telephone number, date of birth, social insurance number or other identification number, salary, nationality, job title, any Shares or directorships held in the Company, details of all Options or any*

---

*other entitlement to Shares awarded, canceled, exercised, vested, unvested or outstanding in Participant's favor ("Data"), for the exclusive purpose of implementing, administering and managing the Plan.*

*Participant understands that Data will be transferred to a designated Plan broker or such other stock plan service provider as may be selected by the Company in the future, which is assisting the Company with the implementation, administration and management of the Plan. Participant understands that the recipients of the Data may be located in the United States or elsewhere, and that the recipient's country (e.g., the United States) may have different data privacy laws and protections than Participant's country. Participant understands that if he or she resides outside the United States, he or she may request a list with the names and addresses of any potential recipients of the Data by contacting his or her local human resources representative. Participant authorizes the Company, its designated Plan broker and any other possible recipients which may assist the Company (presently or in the future) with implementing, administering and managing the Plan to receive, possess, use, retain and transfer the Data, in electronic or other form, for the sole purposes of implementing, administering and managing Participant's participation in the Plan. Participant understands that Data will be held only as long as is necessary to implement, administer and manage Participant's participation in the Plan. Participant understands that if he or she resides outside the United States, he or she may, at any time, view Data, request additional information about the storage and processing of Data, require any necessary amendments to Data or refuse or withdraw the consents herein, in any case without cost, by contacting in writing his or her local human resources representative. Further, Participant understands that he or she is providing the consents herein on a purely voluntary basis. If Participant does not consent, or if Participant later seeks to revoke his or her consent, his or her employment status or service and career with the Employer will not be adversely affected; the only adverse consequence of refusing or withdrawing Participant's consent is that the Company would not be able to grant Participant Options or other Awards or administer or maintain such Awards. Therefore, Participant understands that refusing or withdrawing his or her consent may affect Participant's ability to participate in the Plan. For more information on the consequences of Participant's refusal to consent or withdrawal of consent, Participant understands that he or she may contact his or her local human resources representative.*

**12. Entire Agreement; Enforcement of Rights.** This Agreement, the Plan and the Notice constitute the entire agreement and understanding of the parties relating to the subject matter herein and supersede all prior discussions between the parties. Any prior agreements, commitments or negotiations concerning the purchase of the Shares hereunder are superseded. Participant acknowledges that a waiver by the Company of breach of any provision of this Agreement shall not operate or be construed as a waiver of any other provision of this Agreement, or of any subsequent breach by Participant or any other Plan participant.

**13. Compliance with Laws and Regulations.** Notwithstanding any other provision of the Plan or this Agreement, unless there is an available exemption from any registration, qualification or other legal

---

requirement applicable to the Shares, the Company shall not be required to deliver any Shares issuable upon exercise of the Option prior to the completion of any registration or qualification of the Shares under any local, state, federal or foreign securities or exchange control law or under rulings or regulations of the U.S. SEC or of any other governmental regulatory body, or prior to obtaining any approval or other clearance from any local, state, federal or foreign governmental agency, which registration, qualification or approval the Company shall, in its absolute discretion, deem necessary or advisable. Participant understands that the Company is under no obligation to register or qualify the Shares with the SEC or any state or foreign securities commission or to seek approval or clearance from any governmental authority for the issuance or sale of the Shares. Further, Participant agrees that the Company shall have unilateral authority to amend the Plan and the Agreement without Participant's consent to the extent necessary to comply with securities or other laws applicable to issuance of Shares.

**14. Governing Law and Venue; Severability.** If one or more provisions of this Agreement are held to be unenforceable under applicable law, the parties agree to renegotiate such provision in good faith. In the event that the parties cannot reach a mutually agreeable and enforceable replacement for such provision, then (i) such provision shall be excluded from this Agreement, (ii) the balance of this Agreement shall be interpreted as if such provision were so excluded and (iii) the balance of this Agreement shall be enforceable in accordance with its terms. This Agreement and all acts and transactions pursuant hereto and the rights and obligations of the parties hereto shall be governed, construed and interpreted in accordance with the laws of the State of Delaware, without giving effect to principles of conflicts of law. The Option grant and the provisions of this Agreement are governed by, and subject to, the laws of the State of Delaware, without regard to the conflict of law provisions. For purposes of any action, lawsuit or other proceedings brought to enforce this Agreement, relating to it, or arising from it, the parties hereby submit to and consent to the sole and exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of San Mateo County, California, or the federal courts for the United States for the Northern District of California, and no other courts, where this grant is made and/or to be performed.

**15. Imposition of Other Requirements.** The Company reserves the right to impose other requirements on Participant's participation in the Plan, on the Option and on any Shares acquired upon exercise of the Option, to the extent the Company determines it is necessary or advisable for legal or administrative reasons, and to require Participant to sign any additional agreements or undertakings that may be necessary to accomplish the foregoing.

By the signature on, or electronic acceptance of, the Notice by each of the Participant and the Company's representative, Participant and the Company agree that this Option is granted under and governed by the terms and conditions of the Plan, the Notice and this Agreement. Participant has reviewed the Plan, the Notice and this Agreement in their entirety, has had an opportunity to obtain the advice of counsel prior to executing the Notice, and fully understands all provisions of the Plan, the Notice and this Agreement. Participant hereby agrees to accept as binding, conclusive and final all decisions or interpretations of the Committee upon any questions relating to the Plan, the Notice and the Agreement. Participant further agrees to notify the Company upon any change in the residence address indicated on the Notice.

October 9, 2014

Neeraj Sahejpal

Via Email  
neerajsahejpal@yahoo.com**Re: Offer Letter with Energous**

Dear Cesar:

Energous Corporation (the "Company") is pleased to offer you employment on the following terms:

1. **Position.** Your initial title will be Senior Director of Product Line Marketing and you will initially report to the Company's V.P. of Product Marketing and Licensing. This is a full-time position. While you render services to the Company, you will not engage in any other employment, consulting or other business activity (whether full time or part-time) that would create a conflict of interest with the Company. By signing this letter agreement, you confirm to the Company that you have no contractual commitments or other legal obligations that would prohibit you from performing your duties for the Company.

2. **Cash Compensation.** The Company will pay you a starting salary at the rate of \$7,916.67 per pay period (bi-monthly), payable in accordance with the Company's standard payroll schedule and subject to applicable deductions and withholdings. This salary will be subject to periodic review and adjustments at the Company's discretion. In addition, you are entitled to a 25% incentive bonus (\$47,500) broken into 5 equal parts: one per quarter plus an annual, based on performance of the Company and the individual against the deliverables to be agreed upon with the Chief Executive Officer.

In addition, you are entitled to a \$20,000 sign-on bonus if you start on or before November 10, 2014. This bonus will vest 1/12th for each month of your first year of employment. Should you decide to leave the company or if your employment is terminated for any reason, you will be expected to return the unvested portion of the sign-on bonus to the company. If the company is acquired within the first 12 months of your employment, the sign-on bonus will automatically vest fully.

3. **Employee Benefits.** As a regular employee of the Company, you will be eligible to participate in a number of Company-sponsored benefits. In addition, you will be entitled to paid vacation in accordance with the Company's vacation policy, as in effect from time to time.

4. **Equity Grants.** As part of your offer we will be requesting that the Energous Board of Directors grant you 30,000 Restricted Stock Units (RSU's).

As you may be aware, RSU's are not Stock Options, they are essentially a promise to deliver a share of Energous Corporation common stock at a specific time; in this case within a few days after the RSU has

---

vested. When you sell the common stock represented by the RSU, you will receive the full value of the share of stock on the date you sell it. As Energous is a public company, the vested shares are fully tradable when you receive the underlying share of stock. In order to assist participants in selling their shares, the Company is exploring options with brokerage firms to allow same day trading of common stock.

Your RSU's will vest 25% on each of the 4 anniversaries of your start date. Upon vesting, there may be certain tax consequences so you should consult your financial advisor or CPA well in advance of the vesting dates to discuss the issue.

Additionally, the Company is a "Pay for Performance" based company. As a result, you can expect to receive additional equity incentives for outstanding performance throughout your career at Energous.

If your employment is terminated without cause within 12 months following the completion of a "Change of Control" (as such term is defined in the Company's 2013 Equity Incentive Plan), twenty-five percent (25%) of the then unvested equity awards granted to you, whether stock options, restricted stock, restricted stock units or other equity awards, shall immediately become vested and exercisable and you will be entitled to exercise such vested equity awards in accordance with the applicable grant agreements.

**5. Confidential Information and Inventions Assignment Agreement.** Like all Company employees, you will be required, as a condition of your employment with the Company, to sign the Company's standard Confidential Information and Inventions Assignment Agreement, a copy of which is attached hereto as Exhibit A.

**6. Employment Relationship.** Employment with the Company is for no specific period of time. Your employment with the Company will be "at will," meaning that either you or the Company may terminate your employment at any time and for any reason, with or without cause. Any contrary representations that may have been made to you are superseded by this offer letter. This is the full and complete agreement between you and the Company on this term. Although your job duties, title, compensation and benefits, as well as the Company's personnel policies and procedures, may change from time to time, the "at will" nature of your employment may only be changed in an express written agreement signed by you and a duly authorized officer of the Company (other than you).

#### **7. Tax Matters.**

(a) **Withholding.** All forms of compensation referred to in this letter agreement are subject to reduction to reflect applicable withholding and payroll taxes and other deductions required by law.

(b) **Tax Advice.** You are encouraged to obtain your own tax advice regarding your compensation from the Company. You agree that the Company does not have a duty to design its compensation policies in a manner that minimizes your tax liabilities, and you will not make any claim against the Company or its Board of Directors related to tax liabilities arising from your compensation.

---

**8. Interpretation, Amendment and Enforcement.** This offer letter and Exhibit A constitute the complete offer letter between you and the Company, contain significant terms of your offer of employment with the Company and supersede any prior agreements, representations or understandings (whether written, oral or implied) between you and the Company. This offer letter may not be amended or modified, except by an express written agreement signed by both you and a duly authorized officer of the Company. The terms of this offer letter and the resolution of any disputes as to the meaning, effect, performance or validity of this offer letter or arising out of, related to, or in any way connected with, this offer letter between you and the Company (the "Dispute") will be governed by California law, excluding laws relating to conflicts or choice of law. For all pre-employment and offer letter Disputes, you and the Company submit to the exclusive personal jurisdiction of the federal and state courts located in Alameda County, California, in connection with any Dispute or any claim related to any Dispute.

\* \* \* \* \*

We hope that you will accept our offer to join the Company. You may indicate your agreement with these terms and accept this offer letter by signing and dating both the enclosed duplicate original of this offer letter and the enclosed Confidential Information and Inventions Assignment Agreement and returning them to me. This offer, if not accepted, will expire at the close of business on October 13, 2014. As required by the Company, your employment is contingent on completion of and successful passing of an investigative consumer report and a negative result pre-employment drug test. As required by law, your employment with the Company is also contingent upon your providing legal proof of your identity and authorization to work in the United States. Your employment is also contingent upon your starting work with the Company on or before November 10, 2014.

If you have any questions, please call me at 408-963-0205.

Very truly yours,

ENERGOUS CORPORATION

By: Michael Leabman, CTO & Founder

I have read and accept this employment offer:

Signature of Employee

Dated:

**Attachment**

Exhibit A: Confidential Information and Inventions Assignment Agreement

## SEVERANCE AND CHANGE IN CONTROL AGREEMENT

This Severance and Change in Control Agreement (the “**Agreement**”) is entered into by and between [name] (the “**Executive**”) and Energen Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), on [date], and is effective [date] (the “**Effective Date**”).

**1. Term of Agreement.**

Except to the extent renewed as set forth in this Section 1, this Agreement shall terminate the earlier of the third (3<sup>rd</sup>) anniversary of the Effective Date (the “**Expiration Date**”) or the date the Executive’s employment with the Company terminates for a reason other than a CIC Qualifying Termination; *provided, however*, if a definitive agreement relating to a Change in Control has been signed by the Company on or before Expiration Date, then this Agreement shall remain in effect through the earlier of:

- (a) The date the Executive’s employment with the Company terminates for a reason other than a CIC Qualifying Termination, or
- (b) The date the Company has met all of its obligations under this Agreement following a termination of the Executive’s employment with the Company due to a CIC Qualifying Termination.

This Agreement shall renew automatically and continue in effect for three (3) year periods measured from the initial Expiration Date, unless the Company provides Executive notice of non-renewal at least three (3) months prior to the date on which this Agreement would otherwise renew. For the avoidance of doubt, and notwithstanding anything to the contrary in Section 2 or 3 below, the Company’s non-renewal of this Agreement shall not constitute a Qualifying Termination or a CIC Qualifying Termination, as applicable.

**2. Termination upon a Qualifying Termination other than a CIC Qualifying Termination.** In the event of a Qualifying Termination that is not a CIC Qualifying Termination, notwithstanding any rights or benefits the Executive is eligible to receive under any other applicable plan, employment agreement, or similar contract with the Company, the terms of this Agreement shall represent the sole rights and benefits the Executive is eligible to receive as a result of the Qualifying Termination. If the Executive is subject to a Qualifying Termination, then, subject to Sections 4, 8, and 9 below, Executive will be entitled to the following benefits:

(a) **Severance Benefits.** The Company shall pay the Executive (1) [ ] months of Executive’s monthly base salary (at the rate in effect immediately prior to the actions that resulted in the Qualifying Termination) (2) an amount equal to [x%] of the Executive’s target bonus, plus (3) if agreed to by the Compensation Committee at the time of the Qualifying Termination, a discretionary bonus for the year in which the Qualifying Termination occurs (together, such salary and bonus payments, the “**Severance**”). The Executive will receive the Severance in a cash lump-sum in accordance with the Company’s standard payroll procedures which will be made on the first business day occurring after the sixtieth (60<sup>th</sup>) day following the Separation, *provided that* the Release Conditions have been satisfied.

---

(b) **Equity.** Except to the extent prohibited by Section 409A of the Code: (a) [[x%]/[none]] of the Executive's then-outstanding unvested Equity Awards (as defined below) that vest upon satisfaction of performance criteria, shall accelerate and become vested and (b) [[x%]/[none]] of the Executive's then-outstanding unvested Equity Awards, other than any Equity Awards that vest upon satisfaction of performance criteria, shall accelerate and become vested.

(c) **Pay in Lieu of Continued Employee Benefits.** If Executive timely elects continued coverage under the Consolidated Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1985, as amended ("COBRA"), the Company or its successor shall pay the full amount of Executive's COBRA premiums on behalf of the Executive for the Executive's continued coverage under the Company's health, dental and vision plans, including coverage for the Executive's eligible dependents, for the [ ] month period following the Executive's Separation or, if earlier, until Executive is eligible to be covered under another substantially equivalent medical insurance plan by a subsequent employer. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the Company, in its sole discretion, determines that it cannot provide the foregoing subsidy of COBRA coverage without potentially violating or causing the Company to incur additional expense as a result of noncompliance with applicable law (including, without limitation, Section 2716 of the Public Health Service Act), the Company instead shall provide to Executive a taxable monthly payment in an amount equal to the monthly COBRA premium that Executive would be required to pay to continue the group health coverage in effect on the date of the Separation (which amount shall be based on the premium for the first month of COBRA coverage), which payments shall be made regardless of whether Executive elects COBRA continuation coverage, shall commence on the later of (i) the first day of the month following the month in which Executive experiences a Separation and (ii) the effective date of the Company's determination of violation of applicable law, and shall end on the earlier of (x) the effective date on which Executive becomes covered by a health, dental or vision insurance plan of a subsequent employer, and (y) the last day of the period [ ] months after the Separation, *provided that*, any taxable payments under Section 2(c) will not be paid before the first business day occurring after the sixtieth (60<sup>th</sup>) day following the Separation and, once they commence, will include any unpaid amounts accrued from the date of Executive's Separation (to the extent not otherwise satisfied with continuation coverage). However, if the period comprising the sum of the sixty (60)-day period described in the preceding sentence and the ten (10)-day period described in Section 6(e)(3) below spans two calendar years, then the payments which constitute deferred compensation subject to Section 409A will not in any case be paid in the first calendar year. Executive shall have no right to an additional gross-up payment to account for the fact that such COBRA premium amounts are paid on an after-tax basis.

(d) **General Release.** Any other provision of this Agreement notwithstanding, the benefits under Section 2 shall not apply unless the Executive (i) has executed a general release (in substantially the form attached hereto as Exhibit A) of all known and unknown claims that the Executive may then have against the Company or persons affiliated with the Company and such release has become effective and (ii) has agreed not to prosecute any legal action or other proceeding based upon any of such claims. The release must be in the form prescribed by the Company, without alterations (this document effecting the foregoing, the "**Release**"). The Company will deliver the form of Release to the Executive within thirty (30) days after the Executive's Separation. The Executive must execute and return the Release within the time period specified in the form, and in all events within sixty (60) days following the termination event described in Section 2, as applicable.

---

3. **CIC Qualifying Termination.** In the event of a CIC Qualifying Termination, notwithstanding any rights or benefits the Executive is eligible to receive under any other applicable plan, employment agreement, or similar contract with the Company, the terms of this Agreement shall represent the sole rights and benefits the Executive is eligible to receive as a result of the CIC Qualifying Termination. For the avoidance of doubt, the Executive can only receive the payments below upon a CIC Qualifying Termination and in such event will not be eligible to receive any of the payments or benefits set forth in Section 2. If the Executive is subject to a CIC Qualifying Termination, then, subject to Sections 4, 8, and 9 below, Executive will be entitled to the following benefits:

(a) **CIC Severance Benefits.** The Company shall pay the Executive: (1) [ ] months of the Executive's monthly base salary (at the rate in effect immediately prior to the actions that resulted in the CIC Qualifying Termination), (2) an amount equal to [ ] of the Executive's target bonus, plus (3) a prorated bonus for the year in which such CIC Qualifying Termination occurs (based on the target bonus for such year) (together, such salary and bonus payments the "**CIC Severance**"). The Executive will receive the CIC Severance in a cash lump-sum in accordance with the Company's standard payroll procedures which will be made on the first business day occurring after the sixtieth (60<sup>th</sup>) day following the Separation, *provided that* the Release Conditions have been satisfied.

(b) **Equity.** Each of Executive's then-outstanding unvested Equity Awards, including awards that would otherwise vest only upon satisfaction of performance criteria, shall accelerate and become vested and exercisable with respect to 100% of the then unvested shares subject to all Equity Awards, except to the extent prohibited by Section 409A of the Code. "**Equity Awards**" means all options to purchase shares of Company common stock, as well as any and all other stock-based awards granted to the Executive, including but not limited to stock bonus awards, restricted stock, restricted stock units or stock appreciation rights. The accelerated vesting described above shall be effective as of the Separation. In the event an Equity Award eligible for acceleration is subject to performance metrics or factors, then the vesting acceleration provided for herein shall be based on achievement of such performance award "at-target."

(c) **Pay in Lieu of Continued Employee Benefits.** If Executive timely elects continued coverage under COBRA, the Company or its successor shall pay the full amount of Executive's COBRA premiums on behalf of the Executive for the Executive's continued coverage under the Company's health, dental and vision plans, including coverage for the Executive's eligible dependents, for the [ ] month period following the Executive's Separation or, if earlier, until Executive is eligible to be covered under another substantially equivalent medical insurance plan by a subsequent employer. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the Company, in its sole discretion, determines that it cannot provide the foregoing subsidy of COBRA coverage without potentially violating or causing the Company to incur additional expense as a result of noncompliance with applicable law (including, without limitation, Section 2716 of the Public Health Service Act), the Company instead shall provide to Executive a taxable monthly payment in an amount equal to the monthly COBRA premium that Executive would be required to pay to continue the group health coverage in effect on the date of the

---

Separation (which amount shall be based on the premium for the first month of COBRA coverage), which payments shall be made regardless of whether Executive elects COBRA continuation coverage, shall commence on the later of (i) the first day of the month following the month in which Executive experiences a Separation and (ii) the effective date of the Company's determination of violation of applicable law, and shall end on the earlier of (x) the effective date on which Executive becomes covered by a health, dental or vision insurance plan of a subsequent employer, and (y) the last day of the period [ ] months after the Separation, *provided that*, any taxable payments under Section 3(c) will not be paid before the first business day occurring after the sixtieth (60<sup>th</sup>) day following the Separation and, once they commence, will include any unpaid amounts accrued from the date of Executive's Separation (to the extent not otherwise satisfied with continuation coverage). However, if the period comprising the sum of the sixty (60)-day period described in the preceding sentence and the ten (10)-day period described in Section 6(e)(3) below spans two calendar years, then the payments which constitute deferred compensation subject to Section 409A will not in any case be paid in the first calendar year. Executive shall have no right to an additional gross-up payment to account for the fact that such COBRA premium amounts are paid on an after-tax basis.

(d) **General Release.** Any other provision of this Agreement notwithstanding, the benefits under Section 3 shall not apply unless the Executive (i) has executed the Release (in substantially the form attached hereto as Exhibit A) of all known and unknown claims that the Executive may then have against the Company or persons affiliated with the Company and such release has become effective and (ii) has agreed not to prosecute any legal action or other proceeding based upon any of such claims. The Release must be in the form prescribed by the Company, without alterations. The Company will deliver the form of Release to the Executive within thirty (30) days after the Executive's Separation. The Executive must execute and return the Release within the time period specified in the form, and in all events within sixty (60) days following the termination event described in Section 3, as applicable.

4. **Accrued Compensation and Benefits.** Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in Section 2 or 3 above, in connection with any termination of employment (whether or not a Qualifying Termination or a CIC Qualifying Termination), the Company shall pay Executive's earned but unpaid base salary and other vested but unpaid cash entitlements for the period through and including the termination of employment, including unused earned vacation pay and unreimbursed documented business expenses incurred by Executive through and including the date of termination (collectively "**Accrued Compensation and Expenses**"), as required by law and the applicable Company plan or policy. In addition, Executive shall be entitled to any other vested benefits earned by Executive for the period through and including the termination date of Executive's employment under any other employee benefit plans and arrangements maintained by the Company, in accordance with the terms of such plans and arrangements, except as modified herein (collectively "**Accrued Benefits**"). Any Accrued Compensation and Expenses to which the Executive is entitled shall be paid to the Executive in cash as soon as administratively practicable after the termination and, in any event, no later than two and one-half (2-1/2) months after the end of the taxable year of the Executive in which the termination occurs or at such earlier time as may be required by applicable law. Any Accrued Benefits to which the Executive is entitled shall be paid to the Executive as provided in the relevant plans and arrangements.

---

5. **Covenants.**

(a) **Non-Competition.** The Executive agrees that, during employment with the Company, the Executive shall not engage in any other employment, consulting or other business activity (whether full-time or part-time) that would create a conflict of interest with the Company.

(b) **Cooperation and Non-Disparagement.** The Executive agrees that, during the six (6) month period following Executive's cessation of employment, the Executive shall cooperate with the Company in every reasonable respect and shall use the Executive's best efforts to assist the Company with the transition of Executive's duties to the Executive's successor. The Executive further agrees that, during this six-month period, the Executive shall not in any way or by any means disparage the Company, the members of the Company's Board of Directors or the Company's officers and employees.

6. **Definitions.**

(a) **"Cause"** means: (i) Executive's conviction for, or guilty plea or plea of nolo contendere to, a felony, or misdemeanor involving fraud or crime of moral turpitude; (ii) a willful refusal by Executive to comply with the lawful and reasonable instructions of the Company, or to otherwise perform Executive's duties as lawfully and reasonably determined by the Company, in each case that is not cured by Executive (if such refusal is of a type that is capable of being cured) within 30 days of written notice being given to Executive of such refusal; (iii) any willful act or acts of dishonesty undertaken by Executive and intended to result in Executive's (or any other person's) material gain or personal enrichment at the expense of the Company or any of its customers, partners, affiliates, or employees; or (iv) any willful act of gross misconduct by Executive which is injurious to the Company.

(b) **"Code"** means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended.

(c) **"Change in Control"** means the occurrence of any of the following events: (i) any "person" (as such term is used in Sections 13(d) and 14(d) of the Exchange Act) becomes the "beneficial owner" (as defined in Rule 13d-3 of the Exchange Act), directly or indirectly, of securities of the Company representing more than fifty percent (50%) of the total voting power represented by the Company's then outstanding voting securities; or (ii) the consummation of the sale or disposition by the Company of all or substantially all of the Company's assets; or (iii) the consummation of a merger or consolidation of the Company with any other corporation, other than a merger or consolidation which would result in the voting securities of the Company outstanding immediately prior thereto continuing to represent (either by remaining outstanding or by being converted into voting securities of the surviving entity or its parent) at least fifty percent (50%) of the total voting power represented by the voting securities of the Company or such surviving entity or its parent outstanding immediately after such merger or consolidation; provided that such event in (i) through (iii) (including any series of such events) also qualifies as a "change in control event" under Code Section 409A.

---

(d) **“CIC Qualifying Termination”** means a Separation (i) within twelve (12) months following a Change in Control as a result of (A) the Company or its successor terminating the Executive’s employment with the Company for any reason other than Cause or (B) the Executive voluntarily resigning Executive’s employment with the Company for Good Reason. A termination or resignation due to the Executive’s death or disability shall not constitute a CIC Qualifying Termination.

(e) **“Good Reason”** means, without the Executive’s consent, (i) a material reduction in Executive’s then-current base salary (except for a reduction that is part of a proportional reduction of the base salaries of all Company executives), bonus opportunity or commissions opportunity; (ii) the offices of the Company that Executive is required to report to being moved such that Executive’s usual commuting distance is increased by more than twenty-five (25) miles; or (iii) [a material and adverse change to Executive’s duties or responsibilities, or requiring the Executive to report to anyone other than the Chief Executive Officer of the Company; provided, however, that a resignation by Executive shall not be considered to be for a “Good Reason” unless (i) Executive provides written notice to the Company’s Chief Executive Officer (or the Board of Director’s if the Executive is the actual or acting Chief Executive Officer) of the occurrence of the event which Executive contends constitutes Good Reason within ninety (90) days of the date such event occurs, which notice states Executive’s intention to resign for a “Good Reason” under this Agreement as a result thereof, (ii) the Company does not effect a cure with respect to such event within thirty (30) days of receipt of such written notice, and (iii) Executive thereafter resigns and ceases to perform services as an employee of the Company within ten (10) days of the expiration of the Company’s cure period.

(f) **“Qualifying Termination”** means a Separation prior to a Change in Control or more than twelve (12) months following a Change in Control, in each case as a result of (A) the Company or its successor terminating the Executive’s employment with the Company for any reason other than Cause or (B) the Executive voluntarily resigning Executive’s employment with the Company for Good Reason. A termination or resignation due to the Executive’s death or disability shall not constitute a Qualifying Termination.

(g) **“Release Conditions”** mean the following conditions: (i) Company has received the Executive’s executed Release in substantially the form attached hereto as Exhibit A, and (ii) any rescission period applicable to the Executive’s executed Release has expired without the Executive revoking or rescinding the Release.

(h) **“Separation”** means a “separation from service,” as defined in the regulations under Section 409A of the Code.

## 7. **Successors.**

(a) **Company’s Successors.** The Company shall require any successor (whether direct or indirect and whether by purchase, lease, merger, consolidation, liquidation or otherwise) to all or substantially all of the Company’s business and/or assets, by an agreement in substance and form satisfactory to the Executive, to assume this Agreement and to agree expressly to perform this Agreement in the same manner and to the same extent as the Company would be required to perform it in the absence of a succession. For all purposes under this Agreement, the term “Company” shall include any successor to the Company’s business and/or assets or which becomes bound by this Agreement by operation of law.

---

(b) **Executive's Successors.** This Agreement and all rights of the Executive hereunder shall inure to the benefit of, and be enforceable by, the Executive's personal or legal representatives, executors, administrators, successors, heirs, distributees, devisees and legatees.

**8. Golden Parachute Taxes.**

(a) **Best After-Tax Result.** In the event that any payment or benefit received or to be received by Executive pursuant to this Agreement or otherwise ("**Payments**") would (i) constitute a "parachute payment" within the meaning of Section 280G of the Code and (ii) but for this subsection (a), be subject to the excise tax imposed by Section 4999 of the Code, any successor provisions, or any comparable federal, state, local or foreign excise tax ("**Excise Tax**"), then such Payments shall be either (A) provided in full pursuant to the terms of this Agreement or any other applicable agreement, or (B) provided as to such lesser extent which would result in no portion of such Payments being subject to the Excise Tax ("**Reduced Amount**"), whichever of the foregoing amounts, taking into account the applicable federal, state, local and foreign income, employment and other taxes and the Excise Tax (including, without limitation, any interest or penalties on such taxes), results in the receipt by Executive, on an after-tax basis, of the greatest amount of payments and benefits provided for hereunder or otherwise, notwithstanding that all or some portion of such Payments may be subject to the Excise Tax. Unless the Company and Executive otherwise agree in writing, any determination required under this Section shall be made by independent tax counsel designated by the Company and reasonably acceptable to Executive ("**Independent Tax Counsel**"), whose determination shall be conclusive and binding upon Executive and the Company for all purposes. For purposes of making the calculations required under this Section, Independent Tax Counsel may make reasonable assumptions and approximations concerning applicable taxes and may rely on reasonable, good faith interpretations concerning the application of Sections 280G and 4999 of the Code; *provided that* Independent Tax Counsel shall assume that Executive pays all taxes at the highest marginal rate. The Company and Executive shall furnish to Independent Tax Counsel such information and documents as Independent Tax Counsel may reasonably request in order to make a determination under this Section. The Company shall bear all costs that Independent Tax Counsel may reasonably incur in connection with any calculations contemplated by this Section. In the event that the above clause (ii)(B) of this Section 8 applies, then based on the information provided to Executive and the Company by Independent Tax Counsel, Executive may, in Executive's sole discretion and within thirty (30) days of the date on which Executive is provided with the information prepared by Independent Tax Counsel, determine which and how much of the Payments (including the accelerated vesting of equity compensation awards) to be otherwise received by Executive shall be eliminated or reduced (as long as after such determination the value (as calculated by Independent Tax Counsel in accordance with the provisions of Sections 280G and 4999 of the Code) of the amounts payable or distributable to Executive equals the Reduced Amount). If the Internal Revenue Service (the "**IRS**") determines that any Payment is subject to the Excise Tax, then Section 8(b) hereof shall apply, and the enforcement of Section 8(b) shall be the exclusive remedy to the Company.

(b) **Adjustments.** If, notwithstanding any reduction described in Section 8(a) hereof (or in the absence of any such reduction), the IRS determines that Executive is liable for the Excise Tax as a result of the receipt of one or more Payments, then Executive shall be obligated to surrender or pay back to the Company, within one-hundred twenty (120) days after a final IRS

---

determination, an amount of such payments or benefits equal to the “**Repayment Amount.**” The Repayment Amount with respect to such Payments shall be the smallest such amount, if any, as shall be required to be surrendered or paid to the Company so that Executive’s net proceeds with respect to such Payments (after taking into account the payment of the Excise Tax imposed on such Payments) shall be maximized. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Repayment Amount with respect to such Payments shall be zero (0) if a Repayment Amount of more than zero (0) would not eliminate the Excise Tax imposed on such Payments or if a Repayment Amount of more than zero would not maximize the net amount received by Executive from the Payments. If the Excise Tax is not eliminated pursuant to this Section 8(b), Executive shall pay the Excise Tax.

#### 9. **Miscellaneous Provisions.**

(a) **Section 409A.** To the extent (i) any payments to which Executive becomes entitled under this Agreement, or any agreement or plan referenced herein, in connection with Executive’s termination of employment with the Company constitute deferred compensation subject to Section 409A of the Code and (ii) Executive is deemed at the time of such termination of employment to be a “specified” employee under Section 409A of the Code, then such payment or payments shall not be made or commence until the earlier of (i) the expiration of the six (6)-month period measured from the Executive’s Separation; or (ii) the date of Executive’s death following such Separation; *provided, however*, that such deferral shall only be effected to the extent required to avoid adverse tax treatment to Executive, including (without limitation) the additional twenty percent (20%) tax for which Executive would otherwise be liable under Section 409A(a)(1)(B) of the Code in the absence of such deferral. Upon the expiration of the applicable deferral period, any payments which would have otherwise been made during that period (whether in a single sum or in installments) in the absence of this paragraph shall be paid to Executive or Executive’s beneficiary in one lump sum (without interest). Except as otherwise expressly provided herein, to the extent any expense reimbursement or the provision of any in-kind benefit under this Agreement (or otherwise referenced herein) is determined to be subject to (and not exempt from) Section 409A of the Code, the amount of any such expenses eligible for reimbursement, or the provision of any in-kind benefit, in one calendar year shall not affect the expenses eligible for reimbursement or in kind benefits to be provided in any other calendar year, in no event shall any expenses be reimbursed after the last day of the calendar year following the calendar year in which Executive incurred such expenses, and in no event shall any right to reimbursement or the provision of any in-kind benefit be subject to liquidation or exchange for another benefit. To the extent that any provision of this Agreement is ambiguous as to its exemption or compliance with Section 409A, the provision will be read in such a manner so that all payments hereunder are exempt from Section 409A to the maximum permissible extent, and for any payments where such construction is not tenable, that those payments comply with Section 409A to the maximum permissible extent. To the extent any payment under this Agreement may be classified as a “short-term deferral” within the meaning of Section 409A, such payment shall be deemed a short-term deferral, even if it may also qualify for an exemption from Section 409A under another provision of Section 409A. Payments pursuant to this Agreement (or referenced in this Agreement) are intended to constitute separate payments for purposes of Section 1.409A-2(b)(2) of the regulations under Section 409A. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Agreement, if the period of time comprising (x) the time to consider and make effective the Release and (y) the time after the expiration or cessation of any

---

cure period or attempt to cure Good Reason, spans two calendar years, then, any payments that constitute deferred compensation subject to Section 409A will be made in the second calendar year.

(b) **Other Arrangements.** This Agreement supersedes any and all severance arrangements, vesting acceleration arrangements, or arrangements regarding a Change in Control under any agreement, severance and salary continuation arrangements, programs and plans which were previously offered by the Company to the Executive, including change in control severance arrangements pursuant to an employment agreement or offer letter, and Executive hereby waives Executive's rights to such other benefits. In no event shall any individual receive cash severance benefits under both this Agreement and any other vesting acceleration arrangement, severance pay or salary continuation program, plan or other arrangement with the Company.

(c) **Dispute Resolution.** To ensure rapid and economical resolution of any and all disputes that might arise in connection with this Agreement, Executive and the Company agree that any and all disputes, claims, and causes of action, in law or equity, arising from or relating to this Agreement or its enforcement, performance, breach, or interpretation, will be resolved solely and exclusively by final, binding, and confidential arbitration, by a single arbitrator, in Santa Clara County, and conducted by Judicial Arbitration & Mediation Services, Inc. ("JAMS") under its then-existing employment rules and procedures. Nothing in this section, however, is intended to prevent either party from obtaining injunctive relief in court to prevent irreparable harm pending the conclusion of any such arbitration. Each party to an arbitration or litigation hereunder shall be responsible for the payment of its own attorneys' fees.

(d) **Notice.** Notices and all other communications contemplated by this Agreement shall be in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly given when personally delivered or when mailed by U.S. registered or certified mail, return receipt requested and postage prepaid or deposited with Federal Express Corporation, with shipping charges prepaid. In the case of the Executive, mailed notices shall be addressed to the Executive at the home address most recently communicated to the Company in writing. In the case of the Company, mailed notices shall be addressed to its corporate headquarters, and all notices shall be directed to the attention of its Secretary.

(e) **Waiver.** No provision of this Agreement shall be modified, waived or discharged unless the modification, waiver or discharge is agreed to in writing and signed by the Executive and by an authorized officer of the Company (other than the Executive). No waiver by either party of any breach of, or of compliance with, any condition or provision of this Agreement by the other party shall be considered a waiver of any other condition or provision or of the same condition or provision at another time.

(f) **Withholding Taxes.** All payments made under this Agreement shall be subject to applicable withholding and income taxes.

(g) **Severability.** The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision or provisions of this Agreement shall not affect the validity or enforceability of any other provision hereof, which shall remain in full force and effect.

---

(h) **No Retention Rights.** Nothing in this Agreement shall confer upon the Executive any right to continue in service for any period of specific duration or interfere with or otherwise restrict in any way the rights of the Company or any subsidiary of the Company or of the Executive, which rights are hereby expressly reserved by each, to terminate the Executive's service at any time and for any reason, with or without Cause.

(i) **Choice of Law.** The validity, interpretation, construction and performance of this Agreement shall be governed by the laws of the State of California (other than its choice-of-law provisions).

[Signature Page to Severance and Change in Control Agreement Follows]

---

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, each of the parties has executed this Agreement, in the case of the Company by its duly authorized officer, as of the day and year first above written. This Agreement may be signed in two or more counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original and all of which together shall constitute one and the same instrument.

EXECUTIVE

ENERGOUS CORPORATION

---

[Name]

---

By:  
Title:

---

**EXHIBIT A**

**GENERAL RELEASE OF ALL CLAIMS AND COVENANT NOT TO SUE**

This General Release of All Claims and Covenant Not to Sue (the “Release”) is entered into between [Name of Executive] (“Executive”) and Energous Corporation (the “Company”) (collectively, “the parties”).

**WHEREAS**, on \_\_\_\_\_, Executive and the Company entered into a Severance and Change in Control Agreement with the Company (the “Severance Agreement,” to which this Release is attached as Exhibit A);

**WHEREAS**, on \_\_\_\_\_, Executive’s employment with the Company terminated (the “Separation Date”);

**WHEREAS**, this agreement serves as the Release, pursuant to the Severance Agreement; and

**WHEREAS**, Executive and the Company desire to mutually, amicably and finally resolve and compromise all issues and claims surrounding Executive’s employment and separation from employment with the Company;

**NOW THEREFORE**, in consideration for the mutual promises and undertakings of the parties as set forth below, Executive and the Company hereby enter into this Release.

1. **Acknowledgment of Payment of Wages**: By the signature below, Executive acknowledges that, on the Separation Date, the Company paid Executive for all wages, salary, bonuses, commissions, reimbursable expenses, accrued but unused vacation and any similar payments due Executive from the Company as of the Separation Date. By signing below, Executive acknowledges that the Company does not owe Executive any other amounts, except as may become payable under the Severance Agreement and the Release.

2. **Return of Company Property**: Executive hereby warrants to the Company that Executive has returned to the Company all property or data of the Company of any type whatsoever that has been in Executive’s possession, custody or control.

3. **Consideration**: In exchange for Executive’s agreement to this Release and Executive’s other promises in the Severance Agreement and herein, and pursuant to the Severance Agreement, the Company agrees to provide Executive with the consideration set forth in Section 2 or 3 of the Severance Agreement. By signing below, Executive acknowledges that Executive is receiving the consideration in exchange for waiving Executive’s rights to claims referred to in this Release.

4. **General Release and Waiver of Claims**:

a. The payments and promises set forth in this Release are in full satisfaction of all accrued salary, vacation pay, bonus and commission pay, profit-sharing, stock, stock options, restricted stock units or other ownership interest in the Company, termination benefits or other compensation to which Executive may be entitled by virtue of Executive’s employment with the Company or Executive’s separation from the Company, including pursuant to the

---

Severance Agreement. To the fullest extent permitted by law, Executive hereby releases and waives any other claims Executive may have against the Company and its owners, agents, officers, shareholders, employees, directors, attorneys, subscribers, subsidiaries, affiliates, successors and assigns (collectively "Releasees"), whether known or not known, including, without limitation, claims under any employment laws, including, but not limited to, claims of unlawful discharge, breach of contract, breach of the covenant of good faith and fair dealing, fraud, violation of public policy, defamation, physical injury, emotional distress, claims for additional compensation or benefits arising out of Executive's employment or separation of employment, including pursuant to the Offer Letter, claims under Title VII of the 1964 Civil Rights Act, as amended, the California Fair Employment and Housing Act and any other laws and/or regulations relating to employment or employment discrimination, including, without limitation, claims based on age or under the Age Discrimination in Employment Act or Older Workers Benefit Protection Act, and/or claims based on disability or under the Americans with Disabilities Act.

b. By signing below, Executive expressly waives any benefits of Section 1542 of the Civil Code of the State of California, which provides as follows:

"A GENERAL RELEASE DOES NOT EXTEND TO CLAIMS WHICH THE CREDITOR DOES NOT KNOW OR SUSPECT TO EXIST IN HIS FAVOR AT THE TIME OF EXECUTING THE RELEASE, WHICH IF KNOWN BY HIM MUST HAVE MATERIALLY AFFECTED HIS SETTLEMENT WITH THE DEBTOR."

c. Executive and the Company do not intend to release claims that Executive may not release as a matter of law, including but not limited to claims for indemnity under California Labor Code Section 2802, or any claims for enforcement of this Release. To the fullest extent permitted by law, any dispute regarding the scope of this general release shall be determined by an arbitrator under the procedures set forth in the Dispute Resolution section set forth in the Severance Agreement.

5. Covenant Not to Sue:

d. To the fullest extent permitted by law, at no time subsequent to the execution of this Release will Executive pursue, or cause or knowingly permit the prosecution, in any state, federal or foreign court, or before any local, state, federal or foreign administrative agency, or any other tribunal, of any charge, claim or action of any kind, nature and character whatsoever, known or unknown, which Executive may now have, have ever had, or may in the future have against Releasees, which is based in whole or in part on any matter released by this Release.

e. Nothing in this paragraph shall prohibit Executive from filing a charge or complaint with a government agency where, as a matter of law, the parties may not restrict Executive's right to file such administrative complaints. Furthermore, notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein, nothing in this Release prevents Executive from reporting any violations to the Securities and Exchange Commission or any other federal or state agency. However, Executive understands that nothing in this Release limits your ability to file a charge or

---

complaint with the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission, the National Labor Relations Board, the Occupational Safety and Health Administration, the Securities and Exchange Commission or any other federal, state or local government agency or commission (“Government Agencies”). Executive further understands that this Agreement does not limit Executive’s ability to communicate with any Government Agencies or otherwise participate in any investigation or proceeding that may be conducted by any Government Agency, including providing documents or other information, without notice to the Company. This Release does not limit Executive’s right to receive an award for information provided to any Government Agencies. However, Executive understands and agrees that, by entering into this Release, Executive is releasing any and all individual claims for relief, and that any and all subsequent disputes between Executive and the Company shall be resolved through arbitration as provided in the Severance Agreement.

f. Nothing in this paragraph shall prohibit or impair Executive or the Company from complying with all applicable laws, nor shall this Release be construed to obligate either party to commit (or aid or abet in the commission of) any unlawful act.

6. Review of Release: Executive understands that Executive may take up to twenty-one (21) days to consider this Release and, by signing below, affirms that Executive was advised to consult with an attorney prior to signing this Release. Executive also understands that Executive may revoke this Release within seven (7) days of signing this document and that the consideration to be provided to Executive pursuant to Paragraph 2 or 3 of the Severance Agreement will be provided only at the end of that seven (7) day revocation period.

7. Effective Date: This Release is effective on the eighth (8th) day after Executive signs it, provided Executive has not revoked it as of that time.

[Remainder of page intentionally left blank.]

---

8. Other Terms of Severance Agreement Incorporated Herein: All other terms of the Severance Agreement to the extent not inconsistent with the terms of this Release are hereby incorporated in this Release as though fully stated herein and apply with equal force to this Release, including, without limitation, the provisions on Non-Competition, Cooperation and Non-Disparagement, Section 409A, Dispute Resolution and Choice of Law.

Dated:

---

Name:  
Title:  
For the Company

Dated:

---

Name: [Name of Executive]

**ENERGOUS CORPORATION MBO BONUS PLAN****1. Introduction**

The purpose of the Energoous Corporation MBO Bonus Plan is to retain and incentivize the Company's executive officers.

**2. Definitions**

- (a) "Bonus" means payments in excess of base salary that the Company may distribute to its executive officers. Bonuses are determined in accordance with the procedures described in Exhibit A.
- (b) "CEO" means the Chief Executive Officer of the Company.
- (c) "Company" means Energoous Corporation, a Delaware corporation.
- (d) "Compensation Committee" means the compensation committee of the Company's board of directors.
- (e) "Executive" means the executive officers of the Company, as designated by the Company's board of directors from time to time.
- (f) "Plan" means this Energoous Corporation MBO Bonus Plan.

**3. Determination and Distribution of Bonus; Eligibility**

- (a) Participation in Plan. All Executives who sign and accept the terms of this Plan are eligible to participate in the Plan.
- (b) Determination of Bonus. The Compensation Committee, in its sole discretion, with advice from the CEO, is responsible for selecting the amounts of potential bonuses for Executives, the performance metrics for any such bonuses, and the timing of the determination of achievement of such performance metrics. The Compensation Committee will make such determinations after the completion of the performance period selected by the Compensation Committee as appropriate, to which the Bonus applies. The bonus amount may be calculated as a percentage of the Executive's annual salary, as set forth in the offer letter or employment agreement currently applicable to the Executive or as otherwise determined in the event no such offer letter or employment agreement is currently in effect.
- (c) Eligibility for a Bonus. To be eligible to receive a Bonus, an Executive must (1) be continuously employed throughout the applicable performance period, and in good standing, and (2) achieve the performance objectives selected by the Compensation Committee. Objectives may include, in the discretion of the Compensation Committee with advice from the CEO:

- 1. Group or Individual Objectives: performance metrics that will determine the Bonus that may be earned by any individual Executive or group of Executives;
- 2. Weighting: the percentage of any Bonus to be determined by any one or more performance metrics; and

---

3. **Timing:** performance periods for Bonuses that may be measured on an annual, quarterly, or other basis.

(d) **Distribution.** Payment of any Bonus will be made promptly after the Compensation Committee's determination of whether a Bonus should be awarded and, if so, the amount of that award on a quarterly, or annual basis, as appropriate. Company will be responsible for any tax withholding obligations.

(e) **Termination of Employment.** Upon termination of employment, the Executive will be entitled to any Bonus earned and unpaid as of the termination date. Such Bonus will be paid upon termination or as otherwise agreed between the Executive and the Company.

4. **Miscellaneous**

(a) **Modification.** The Compensation Committee reserves the right to amend, supersede or terminate the Plan, in whole or in part, at any time as it deems fit in its sole discretion, with or without prior notice. Any change to the Plan shall be prospective in application and shall be in a writing signed by the Compensation Committee.

(b) **Confidentiality.** The Plan is confidential and proprietary.

(c) **Integration.** The Plan, including Exhibit A, forms the complete and exclusive statement of the subject matter of bonuses. The terms in the Plan supersede any other agreements or promises made to an Executive by anyone, whether written or oral, regarding bonuses, including any agreements or representations about bonus compensation in any offer letter or employment agreement.

5. **Arbitration of Disputes**

The parties agree to submit to mandatory binding arbitration any and all claims arising out of or related to the Executive's employment with the Company. This agreement to arbitrate applies to any and all claims including, but by no means limited to, claims of discrimination, harassment, unpaid wages, breach of contract, wrongful termination, torts, as well as claims based upon any federal, state or local ordinance, statute, regulation or constitutional provision. However, each party may, at its, his or her option, seek injunctive relief in a court of competent jurisdiction related to the improper use, disclosure or misappropriation of a party's private, proprietary, confidential or trade secret information. Further, the Executive may bring an administrative claim before any government agency where, as a matter of law, the parties may not restrict the Executive's ability to file such claims (including the California Labor Commissioner, Equal Employment Opportunity Commission and the National Labor Relations Board). However, to the fullest extent permitted under applicable law (including but not limited to the federal Arbitration Act, and/or the California Arbitration Act), the Executive agrees that arbitration shall be the exclusive remedy for his or her individual claims that are the subject of such administrative complaints. The arbitration shall be conducted before a single, neutral arbitrator.

---

**ACKNOWLEDGMENT**

I acknowledge that I have read, understand, and agree to Energois Corporation MBO Bonus Plan.

Dated: March 15, 2018

/s/ Brian Sereda  
Executive Signature

Brian Sereda  
Print Name

---

**EXHIBIT A**

**Payout Terms:** The Bonus is paid to the relevant Executive, if earned, on a quarterly, annual or other period as determined by the Compensation Committee.

**Performance Goals:** The Compensation Committee will select one or more performance metrics from among the following measures, in any combination, on a GAAP or non-GAAP basis, and measured, on an absolute basis or relative to a pre-established target:

- (a) Bookings or billings;
- (b) Revenue or net revenue;
- (c) gross profit or gross margin;
- (d) Operating income and Operating margin;
- (e) Net income;
- (f) Operating expenses or operating margin;
- (g) Net income;
- (h) Earnings (which may include earnings before interest and taxes, earnings before taxes, net earnings, stock-based compensation expenses, depreciation and amortization), including earnings per share;
- (i) Total stockholder return;
- (j) Market share;
- (k) Return on assets or net assets;
- (l) The Company's stock price;
- (m) Growth in stockholder value relative to a pre-determined index;
- (n) Return on equity;
- (o) Return on invested capital;
- (p) Cash flow (including free cash flow or operating cash flows)
- (q) Cash conversion cycle;
- (r) Economic value added;
- (s) Individual confidential business objectives;
- (t) Contract awards or backlog;
- (u) expense reduction;
- (v) Credit rating;
- (w) Strategic plan development and implementation;
- (x) Succession plan development and implementation;
- (y) Improvement in workforce diversity;
- (z) Customer satisfaction;
- (aa) New product invention or innovation;
- (bb) Attainment of research and development milestones;
- (cc) Improvements in productivity;
- (dd) Balance of cash, cash equivalents and marketable securities;
- (ee) Completion of an identified special project;
- (ff) Completion of a joint venture or other corporate transaction;
- (gg) Employee satisfaction and/or retention;
- (hh) Research and development expenses;
- (ii) Working capital targets and changes in working capital;
- (jj) Completion of a goal within an existing contract;
- (kk) Revenue related to a particular product, service or customer; group of products services, or customers or type of products, services or customers;

- 
- (ll) Attainment of regulatory goals or milestones;
  - (mm) Attainment of any phase of a development, design, fabrication, production or fulfillment goal;
  - (nn) Customer acquisition, retention or engagement;
  - (oo) Completion of financing goals; and
  - (pp) Any other metric that is capable of measurement as determined by or suggested to the Committee.

**Amendment/Modification:** The Compensation Committee may terminate, or modify or amend any term of, this Energous Corporation MBO Bonus Plan.

**Energous Corporation****Non-Employee Director Compensation Policy**

Members of the Board of Directors (the “Board”) of Energous Corporation (the “Company”) who are not employees of the Company or any subsidiary of the Company (“Directors”) shall be paid the following amounts in consideration for their services on the Board.

**Initial Compensation**

Upon his or her initial election to the Board (the “Appointment Date”), each new Director shall receive restricted stock units (“RSUs”) having a value equal to \$225,000 divided by the Fair Market Value of the Common Stock (as defined below) on the Appointment Date. Such RSUs shall vest annually vest in three equal annual installments beginning on the one-year anniversary of the Appointment Date (each such anniversary an “Initial Award Vesting Date”). If a Director ceases to serve as a Director before an Initial Award Vesting Date due to the Director’s death, or if there is a Change in Control prior to an Initial Award Vesting Date, then the RSUs shall become fully vested as of the date of such death or Change in Control, as applicable. If a Director ceases to serve as a Director at any time for any reason other than death before the earlier of an Initial Award Vesting Date or a Change in Control, then any remaining unvested portion of such initial equity grant shall be forfeited as of the date of such cessation of services.

A Director may elect to receive all or any portion of the RSUs payable upon his or her initial election to the Board in the form of deferred stock units (“DSUs”). DSUs are bookkeeping entries representing the equivalent of shares of the Company’s common stock “Common Stock”) and are paid in shares of Common Stock on the effective date of the Director’s cessation of services to the Board. To be effective, notice of such election must be delivered to the Company’s Chief Financial Officer in writing or electronically on a form acceptable to the Company prior to the Appointment Date. If a Director elects to receive DSUs in lieu of RSUs granted upon his or her initial election to the Board, such Director shall be granted a number of DSUs equal to the number of RSUs pursuant to which such election has been made. Any DSUs awarded to a Director pursuant to this paragraph shall have the same vesting terms and conditions as RSUs described in the immediately preceding paragraph as if such Director had elected to receive RSUs pursuant to the immediately preceding paragraph.

**Annual Compensation****Cash Compensation**

Each Director shall be paid an annual cash retainer of \$50,000 prorated for partial years of service and paid quarterly in arrears. The Chairman of the Board, Lead Independent Director and committee members shall be paid the following additional annual cash retainer amounts paid quarterly in arrears:

---

Chairman of the Board:	\$50,000
Lead Independent Director:	\$25,000
Audit Committee Chair:	\$20,000
Audit Committee Member:	\$10,000
Compensation Committee Chair:	\$15,000
Compensation Committee Member:	\$ 5,000
Corporate Governance and Nominating Committee Chair:	\$10,000
Corporate Governance and Nominating Committee Member:	\$ 5,000

A Director may elect to receive all or any portion of the cash consideration otherwise payable in respect of a particular calendar year in the form of DSUs. To be effective, notice of such election must be delivered to the Company's Chief Financial Officer in writing or electronically on a form acceptable to the Company prior to the commencement of the subject year. If a Director elects to receive DSUs in lieu of cash for a particular calendar year, such Director shall, on the first trading day following December 31 of the preceding year (the "DSU Grant Date"), be granted a number of DSUs equal to the cash amount of such election divided by the Fair Market Value of the Common Stock on the DSU Grant Date. The DSUs shall not become vested until the first anniversary of the DSU Grant Date (the "DSU Vesting Date"). If a Director ceases to serve as a Director before the DSU Vesting Date due to the Director's death, or if there is a Change in Control prior to the DSU Vesting Date, then the DSUs shall become fully vested as of the date of such death or Change in Control, as applicable. If a Director ceases to serve as a Director at any time for any reason other than death before the earlier of the DSU Vesting Date or a Change in Control, then the DSUs shall become vested pro rata (based on the number of days between the DSU Grant Date and the date of cessation of services divided by 365), and to the extent the DSUs are not thereby vested they shall be forfeited as of the date of such cessation of services.

### **Equity Compensation**

On the first trading day following December 31 of each year (each, an "RSU Grant Date"), each Director will also be awarded a number of RSUs equal to \$75,000 divided by the Fair Market Value of the Common Stock on the RSU Grant Date; provided, however, a Director may elect to receive all or any portion of such compensation in the form of DSUs. To be effective, notice of such election must be delivered to the Company's Chief Financial Officer in writing or electronically on a form acceptable to the Company prior to the commencement of the subject year. In addition, the Chairman of the Board, if independent, shall be awarded an additional 25,000 RSUs on the RSU Grant Date. All Director RSUs under this Policy shall be made under and pursuant to the Plan (as defined below). The RSUs shall not become vested until the first anniversary of the RSU Grant Date (the "Annual Award Vesting Date"). If a Director ceases to serve as a Director before the Annual Award Vesting Date due to the Director's death, or if there is a Change in Control prior to the Annual Award Vesting Date, then the RSUs shall become

---

fully vested as of the date of such death or Change in Control, as applicable. If a Director ceases to serve as a Director at any time for any reason other than death before the earlier of the Annual Award Vesting Date or a Change in Control, then the annual equity grant shall become vested pro rata (based on the number of days between the RSU Grant Date and the date of cessation of services divided by 365), and to the extent the RSUs are not thereby vested they shall be forfeited as of the date of such cessation of services.

### **Equity Award Terms**

Capitalized terms used herein and not otherwise defined shall have the meanings given to them in the Company's 2014 Non-Employee Equity Compensation Plan (the "Plan"). Any DSUs issued in accordance with the terms of this Policy shall be made under and pursuant to the Plan. The Board, in its sole discretion and in recognition for meritorious service, may elect to vest up to 100% of a Director's unvested equity awards upon retirement.

### **Expense Reimbursement**

The compensation described in this Policy is in addition to reimbursement of all out-of-pocket expenses incurred by Directors in attending meetings of the Board.

### **Employee Directors**

An employee of the Company who serves as a director on the Board or on the board of directors of a Company subsidiary receives no additional compensation for such service.

### **Section 409A**

This Policy is intended to comply with Code Section 409A to the extent subject thereto, and, accordingly, to the maximum extent permitted, the Policy shall be interpreted and administered to be in compliance therewith. Any payments described in this Policy that are due within the "short-term deferral period" as defined in Code Section 409A shall not be treated as deferred compensation unless applicable laws require otherwise.

Amended December 28, 2018

**List of Subsidiaries of Energois Corporation.**

None.

**CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM**

We consent to the incorporation by reference in the Registration Statements of Energos Corporation on Form S-3 (No. 333-203622) and Forms S-8 (No. 333-196360, 333-203152, 333-204690, 333-210239 and 333-214785) of our report dated March 16, 2018, with respect to our audits of the financial statements of Energos Corporation as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 and for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, which report is included in this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Energos Corporation for the year ended December 31, 2017.

/s/ Marcum LLP  
Marcum LLP  
Melville, New York  
March 16, 2018

**CERTIFICATION OF THE PRINCIPAL EXECUTIVE OFFICER  
PURSUANT TO SECTION 302 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002**

I, Stephen R. Rizzone, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Energen Corporation;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
  - a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
  - b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
  - d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
  - b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: March 16, 2018

/s/ Stephen R. Rizzone

Name: Stephen R. Rizzone

Title: President, Chief Executive Officer and Director

**CERTIFICATION OF THE PRINCIPAL FINANCIAL OFFICER  
PURSUANT TO SECTION 302 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002**

I, Brian Sereda, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Energeous Corporation;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
  - a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
  - b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
  - d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
  - b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: March 16, 2018

/s/ Brian Sereda

Name: Brian Sereda

Title: Senior Vice President and Chief Financial Officer

**CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO  
18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350,  
AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO  
SECTION 906 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002**

In connection with the Annual Report of Energous Corporation (the "Company") on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017 as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on the date hereof (the "Report"), we, Stephen R. Rizzone, President and Chief Executive Officer of the Company, and Brian Sereda, Chief Financial Officer of the Company, certify, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. § 1350, as adopted pursuant to § 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that:

- (1) The Report fully complies with the requirements of section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and
- (2) The information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

A signed original of this written statement required by Section 906 has been provided to Energous Corporation and will be retained by Energous Corporation and furnished to the Securities and Exchange Commission or its staff upon request.

/s/ Stephen R. Rizzone

---

Name: Stephen R. Rizzone  
Title: President, Chief Executive Officer and Director  
Date: March 16, 2018

/s/ Brian Sereda

---

Name: Brian Sereda  
Title: Senior Vice President and Chief Financial Officer  
Date: March 16, 2018